



# **SIEBEL REMOTE AND REPLICATION MANAGER ADMINISTRATION GUIDE**

*VERSION 7.5.3, REV. A  
DECEMBER 2003*

Siebel Systems, Inc., 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404  
Copyright © 2003 Siebel Systems, Inc.  
All rights reserved.  
Printed in the United States of America

No part of this publication may be stored in a retrieval system, transmitted, or reproduced in any way, including but not limited to photocopy, photographic, magnetic, or other record, without the prior agreement and written permission of Siebel Systems, Inc.

Siebel, the Siebel logo, TrickleSync, TSQ, Universal Agent, and other Siebel product names referenced herein are trademarks of Siebel Systems, Inc., and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Other product names, designations, logos, and symbols may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation, delivered subject to the Department of Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement, are “commercial computer software” as set forth in DFARS 227.7202, Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation, and as such, any use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation shall be subject to the restrictions contained in the applicable Siebel license agreement. All other use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be subject to the applicable Siebel license agreement and the restrictions contained in subsection (c) of FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June 1987), or FAR 52.227-14, Rights in Data—General, including Alternate III (June 1987), as applicable. Contractor/licensor is Siebel Systems, Inc., 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404.

**Proprietary Information**

Siebel Systems, Inc. considers information included in this documentation and in Siebel eBusiness Applications Online Help to be Confidential Information. Your access to and use of this Confidential Information are subject to the terms and conditions of: (1) the applicable Siebel Systems software license agreement, which has been executed and with which you agree to comply; and (2) the proprietary and restricted rights notices included in this documentation.

# Contents

## Introduction

How This Guide Is Organized . . . . .	12
Revision History . . . . .	13

## Chapter 1. Siebel Remote Concepts

Siebel Remote Architecture . . . . .	18
Elements in Siebel Remote Architecture . . . . .	19
Siebel Remote Flow Diagram . . . . .	21
Siebel Remote Data Store Components . . . . .	27
Siebel Database Server . . . . .	27
Siebel File System . . . . .	28
Local Database and File System . . . . .	29
Siebel Remote Client Software . . . . .	30
Siebel Remote Server Components . . . . .	31
Creating Siebel Server Directories for Mobile Web Clients . . . . .	32
Generate New Database . . . . .	32
Database Extract . . . . .	34
Synchronization Manager . . . . .	34
Transaction Processor . . . . .	34
Transaction Router . . . . .	35
Transaction Merger . . . . .	36
Using Siebel Remote . . . . .	36
Registering a Mobile User . . . . .	37

Generating a Database . . . . .	37
Extracting a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	37
Initializing the Local Database . . . . .	37
Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	39
How Changes Are Propagated to and from a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	43
Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client Machine . . . . .	49
Security and Authentication . . . . .	50
Authentication During Synchronization with Server Database . . . . .	50
Authentication During Normal Operations . . . . .	51
Locking and Concurrency . . . . .	51
Conflict Detection and Resolution . . . . .	52
Update Conflicts . . . . .	53
Duplicate Conflicts . . . . .	54
Delete Conflicts . . . . .	55
Merge Conflicts . . . . .	55

## **Chapter 2. Implementing Siebel Remote Server**

Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences . . . . .	58
MRG: System Conflict Resolution . . . . .	61
MRG: Docking Timestamp Source . . . . .	61
Docking: Transaction Logging . . . . .	61
Docking: Get All PostnCon rows . . . . .	63
CSM Logging . . . . .	64
MRG: Txns Per Commit . . . . .	64
MRG: User Friendly Notification . . . . .	64
LOGMGR: Vis Rules Per Statement . . . . .	65
DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement 1 . . . . .	65
DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement N . . . . .	65
Enterprise DB Server Code Page . . . . .	65
Choosing Assignment Manager Settings for Siebel Remote . . . . .	66
Disabling Local Access to All Views . . . . .	66

Starting Siebel Remote Server Components . . . . .	67
Transaction Processor . . . . .	69
Transaction Router . . . . .	72
Transaction Merger . . . . .	74
Synchronization Manager . . . . .	75
Enabling Windows NT Rights on Siebel Remote Server . . . . .	77
Changing the Local Database Administrator Password . . . . .	77
Generating a New Database Template . . . . .	78
Creating a New Empty Database File . . . . .	79
Running the Generate New Database Component . . . . .	79
Distributing Database Templates to Siebel Remote Servers . . . . .	82

### **Chapter 3. Setting Up Mobile Web Clients**

Setting Up Mobile Web Client Hardware and Software . . . . .	84
Enabling Network Connectivity . . . . .	84
Establishing Autodial Preferences . . . . .	84
Setting Synchronization Preferences . . . . .	85
Synchronization Parameters . . . . .	85
Using Autosynchronization . . . . .	87
Filtering Regional Workflows . . . . .	89
Enabling Encryption for Synchronization Networking . . . . .	89
Using a Different Data Source . . . . .	90
Registering a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	91
Routing Rules and Dock Objects . . . . .	94
Routing Rules . . . . .	94
Dock Objects . . . . .	95
Using Routing Models . . . . .	96
Field Sales Representative Standard . . . . .	97
Field Sales Manager Standard . . . . .	98
Field Technician . . . . .	99

Senior Field Engineer . . . . .	101
Field Engineer . . . . .	106
Consultant . . . . .	110
Analyst . . . . .	111
Minimal Data . . . . .	113
Mobile Partner User . . . . .	113
Mobile Client – Standard . . . . .	113
Mobile Client – Extract Only . . . . .	114
Executive Management . . . . .	114
Limiting Views Available to Mobile Web Clients . . . . .	114
Using the Responsibilities View . . . . .	115
Using the Views View . . . . .	116
Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges . . . . .	117

## **Chapter 4. Extracting Databases for Mobile Web Clients**

Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	119
Database Extraction for Multiple Users . . . . .	122
Example of Extracting Databases for Multiple Users . . . . .	123
Performing a Database Extract to a CD Directory . . . . .	124
Parameters of the Database Extract Component . . . . .	126
Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database . . . . .	129
Enabling the Stand-Alone Synchronizer . . . . .	131
Viewing Session Details on Mobile Web Clients . . . . .	134

## **Chapter 5. Administering Siebel Remote**

Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components . . . . .	138
Transaction Processor . . . . .	139
Transaction Router . . . . .	139
Transaction Merger . . . . .	141
Monitoring Siebel Remote Operations . . . . .	141

Monitoring Mobile Web Client Status . . . . .	142
Monitoring Transaction Logs . . . . .	150
Monitoring Siebel Remote Server Operation Status . . . . .	153
Data Synchronization . . . . .	154
Managing Synchronization Frequency . . . . .	154
Auto Synchronization . . . . .	155
Sending Messages to Mobile Users . . . . .	156
Refreshing a Client Database . . . . .	156
Deactivating and Reactivating a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	157
Deleting a Mobile Web Client . . . . .	158
Changing Routing Models . . . . .	160
Adding New Mobile Users . . . . .	161
How to Set Client-Side Logging . . . . .	161
Event Levels . . . . .	161
Log File Naming . . . . .	163
Archiving . . . . .	163
Log File Location . . . . .	164
Event Tracing for Locking . . . . .	164
Handling Failure and Recovery . . . . .	166
Siebel Remote Transmission Failure . . . . .	167
Siebel Remote Server Failure . . . . .	167
Siebel Remote Server Media Failure . . . . .	167
File Server Media Failure . . . . .	168
Database Server Failure . . . . .	168
Server Database Records Truncated or Changed . . . . .	169
Database Server Media Failure . . . . .	169
Siebel Client Database Failure . . . . .	171
Recovery from Client Initialization Failure . . . . .	171
Restoring the File System After Recovery from a Previous Image . . . . .	172

## **Chapter 6. Siebel Remote Reports**

Status Reports . . . . .	173
Using the Outbox Analysis Report . . . . .	177

## **Chapter 7. Siebel Replication Manager Concepts**

Siebel Replication Manager . . . . .	183
Comparison with Siebel Remote . . . . .	183
Benefits of Siebel Replication Manager . . . . .	184
Siebel Replication Manager Architecture . . . . .	184
Routing Groups and Routing Rules . . . . .	186
Components of Siebel Replication Manager . . . . .	188
Components Supported on a Regional Node . . . . .	190

## **Chapter 8. Implementing Siebel Replication Manager**

Installing a New Enterprise Server . . . . .	198
Installing the Siebel Name Server . . . . .	199
Installing the Siebel Server . . . . .	199
Installing the Siebel Database Server . . . . .	200
Installing the Siebel File System . . . . .	201
Defining the Regional Node . . . . .	201
Registering a Regional Node . . . . .	203
Adding Mobile Users to the Regional Database . . . . .	205
Extracting the Regional Database . . . . .	206
Initializing the Regional Database . . . . .	210
Configuring Regional Node for Mobile Web Clients . . . . .	218
Starting Replication Agent . . . . .	218
Setting Up Additional Application Servers on Regional Nodes . . . . .	220

## **Chapter 9. Administering Siebel Replication Manager**

Managing Mobile Databases on a Regional Node . . . . .	222
Adding Connected Users to a Regional Node . . . . .	223
Managing Synchronization . . . . .	223
Resolving Synchronization Conflicts . . . . .	224
Replication Agent Parameters . . . . .	225
Changing the Routing Group for a Regional Server . . . . .	227
Monitoring Regional Application Servers . . . . .	229
Managing Security and Authentication . . . . .	229
Performing Backup and Recovery of Data . . . . .	230
Managing Backlog in the Transaction Log Table . . . . .	230
Deactivating and Reactivating a Regional Node . . . . .	231

## **Chapter 10. Upgrading Regional Nodes**

Upgrading the Repository for a Regional Node . . . . .	233
Repository Upgrade with Siebel Anywhere . . . . .	234
Repository Upgrade Without Siebel Anywhere . . . . .	235

## **Chapter 11. Troubleshooting Remote and Replication Manager**

Setting Up Remote Server and Remote Clients . . . . .	237
About Merge Conflicts Related to Assignment Manager . . . . .	239
Distinguishing Between Harmless and Meaningful Merge Conflicts . . . . .	240
Replication Agent . . . . .	241
Replication Agent Failure Due to Special Characters During an Update . . . . .	241
Synchronization Manager . . . . .	243
SynchMgr Situation . . . . .	243
FAQ: What to Do with an Initialization or Synchronization Problem . . . . .	245
FAQ: Long Initialization/Synchronization Times . . . . .	245
FAQ: Cannot Connect to Server During Synchronization . . . . .	246

What to Do When Transaction Merger Fails . . . . .249  
Users Who Cannot See Records When Connected Locally . . . . . 251  
How to Handle a Large Transaction Backlog . . . . .253

**Appendix A. Client-Side Merge Issues on the Server**

Definition of the Problem . . . . .257  
Solution . . . . .258

**Appendix B. Docking Object Changes**

Routing Definition Differences in Docking Objects . . . . .261  
Visibility Level Changes for Docking Objects . . . . .268  
New Regional Docking Objects . . . . .272

**Appendix C. Routing Models for Financial Services**

Using Routing Models in Siebel Financial Services . . . . .273  
    Analyzing the Use of Routing Models . . . . . 275  
    Descriptions of Financial Services Routing Models . . . . . 277

**Index**

# Introduction

This guide provides information necessary to implement, configure, and administer Siebel Remote and Siebel Replication Manager.

Although job titles and duties at your company may differ from those listed in the following table, the audience for this guide consists primarily of employees in these categories:

<b>Database Administrators</b>	Persons who administer the database system, including data loading, system monitoring, backup and recovery, space allocation and sizing, and user account management.
<b>Siebel Application Administrators</b>	Persons responsible for planning, setting up, and maintaining Siebel applications.
<b>Siebel System Administrators</b>	Persons responsible for the whole system, including installing, maintaining, and upgrading Siebel applications.

The guide assumes users have an understanding of their system and network.

## Product Modules and Options

This guide contains descriptions of modules that are optional and for which you may not have purchased a license. Siebel's Sample Database also includes data related to these optional modules. As a result, your software implementation may differ from descriptions in this Bookshelf. To find out more about the modules your organization has purchased, see your corporate purchasing agent or your Siebel sales representative.

## **How This Guide Is Organized**

This guide includes three areas: Siebel Remote, Siebel Replication Manager, and Troubleshooting. Also, there are two appendices: Client-Side Merge Issues on the Server and Docking Object Differences.

The first two areas discuss concepts, implementation, and administration of Remote and Replication Manager. The third area provides troubleshooting information using scenarios and FAQs to help administrators resolve problems.

The first appendix discusses repair of orphaned server records that may appear from time to time when you invoke the merge functionality from a client. The second appendix describes the differences in the Docking Objects between Siebel 7.5 and Siebel 7.0.4. The third appendix describes the routing models in Siebel Financial Services that are different from the routing models in Siebel Remote and Replication Manager.

# Revision History

*Siebel Remote and Replication Manager Administration Guide*

## Version 7.5.3, Rev. A

**Table 1. Changes Made in Version 7.5.3, Rev. A**

Topic	Revision
<a href="#">“Docking: Transaction Logging” on page 61</a>	Expanded topic to clarify consequences of and procedures for enabling and disabling transaction logging. Applies to version 7.5 and later.
<a href="#">“Using a Different Data Source” on page 90</a>	Expanded procedure to include steps concerning creation of a new ODBC data source and modification of LocalDbODBCDataSource parameter. Applies to version 7.5 and later.
<a href="#">“Registering a Mobile Web Client” on page 91</a>	Modified information about views for which Mobile Web Clients require access. Applies to version 7.5 and later.
<a href="#">“Changing Routing Models” on page 160</a>	Modified wording in step 4 to improve clarity. Applies to version 7.5 and later.
<a href="#">“Registering a Regional Node” on page 203</a>	Added a note concerning mobile user and connected user requirements. Applies to version 7.0 and later.
<a href="#">“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206</a>	Added a cautionary note concerning connected user requirement. Applies to version 7.0 and later.
<a href="#">“About Merge Conflicts Related to Assignment Manager” on page 239</a>	Added topic. Applies to version 7.0 and later.
<a href="#">“Distinguishing Between Harmless and Meaningful Merge Conflicts” on page 240</a>	Added topic. Applies to version 7.0 and later.

## Version 7.5.3

**Table 2. Changes Made in Version 7.5.3**

Topic	Revision
<a href="#">“New or Enhanced Capabilities” on page 17</a>	In the last bullet of the topic, added information about changes to routing of certain enterprise transactions. Applies to version 7.5.3 and later.
<a href="#">“Siebel Remote Flow Diagram” on page 21</a>	Modified information in <a href="#">Table 4</a> about the timing of applying transactions to local databases. Applies to version 7.5.3 and later.
<a href="#">“Siebel Remote Client Software” on page 31</a>	Modified cautionary paragraph to improve clarity and visibility. Added a cross-reference to information about Save Client Transactions functionality. Applies to version 7.0 and later.
<a href="#">“Synchronization Session” on page 41</a>	Added a note about the timing of applying transactions to local databases. Applies to version 7.5.3 and later.
<a href="#">“Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client Machine” on page 50</a>	Added information about progress indicator. Applies to version 7.5.3 and later.
<a href="#">“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117</a>	Modified information concerning AppServer authentication in Windows environments, for clarification. Applies to version 7.5 and later.
<a href="#">“Enabling the Stand-Alone Synchronizer” on page 131</a>	Added information about new command-line options /ApplyTxns and /ParallelApply. Added procedures for downloading transactions without applying them and applying previously downloaded transactions. These additions apply to version 7.5.3 and later.
<a href="#">“Using the Client Status View” on page 142</a>	Modified information about when this view is and is not updated. Applies to version 7.5.3 and later.

### Additional Changes

In [Appendix B, “Docking Object Changes,”](#) changed all references to version 7.0.3 to 7.0.4, to reflect a more widely deployed software version.

## Version 7.5, Rev. A

**Table 3. Changes Made in Version 7.5, Rev. A**

Topic	Revision
<a href="#">“Siebel Remote Flow Diagram” on page 21</a>	Added information about unsupported SQL changes in <a href="#">Table 4 on page 23</a> .
<a href="#">“Siebel Database Server” on page 28</a>	Expanded description of master transaction log table.
<a href="#">“Siebel Remote Client Software” on page 31</a>	Added prohibitions concerning local databases, directory names, and DX files.
<a href="#">“File Attachments and Siebel Remote” on page 49</a>	Added information about how Siebel Remote handles file attachments.
<a href="#">“Duplicate Conflicts” on page 55</a>	Added information about the column CONFLICT_ID.
<a href="#">“Docking: Transaction Logging” on page 61</a>	Added recommendation about EIM batch sizes.
<a href="#">“Choosing Assignment Manager Settings for Siebel Remote” on page 66</a>	Added this topic.
<a href="#">“Transaction Router” on page 72</a>	Modified usage notes for TS Cache Size parameter and added entry for Id Db Size parameter in <a href="#">Table 9 on page 72</a> .
<a href="#">“Creating a New Empty Database File” on page 79</a>	Added note concerning dbinit utility.
<a href="#">“Running the Generate New Database Component” on page 79</a>	Modified usage note for SQL Anywhere Database parameter in <a href="#">Table 12 on page 81</a> .
<a href="#">“Dock Objects” on page 95</a>	Added note about actions to take after any database schema change.
<a href="#">“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117</a>	Modified wording to clarify context and details.

**Table 3. Changes Made in Version 7.5, Rev. A**

Topic	Revision
<a href="#">“Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client” on page 119</a>	Added paragraph about database schemas and private dock objects.
<a href="#">“Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client” on page 119</a>	Changed default value for Database Template File Name parameter in <a href="#">Table 15 on page 126</a> .
<a href="#">“Components Supported on a Regional Node” on page 190</a>	Expanded and modified topic to reflect current details.
<a href="#">“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206</a>	Expanded and modified information concerning parallel database extract utility (pdbextract). Includes changes to relevant procedures.
<a href="#">“Initializing the Regional Database” on page 210</a>	Added paragraph about database user ID requirements for use with srvrinit utility.

**Additional Changes**

- Added [Appendix C, “Routing Models for Financial Services.”](#) This appendix was formerly a separate document, *Siebel Remote and Replication Manager Administration Guide Addendum for Financial Services*. It contains information that applies to the Siebel Financial Services product only.

This chapter provides an overview of Siebel Remote. This includes architecture, components, software, setup, security, and resolution of data conflicts between the two users.

Siebel Remote allows Mobile Web Clients (typically operating remotely, in disconnected mode on laptops) to connect to a Siebel Server and exchange updated data and files, a process known as synchronization. Siebel Remote supports mobile computing by allowing field personnel to share current information with members of virtual teams of other mobile and connected users across the organization.

As mobile users enter and update information in their local databases, Siebel Remote client software tracks the changes as synchronization transactions. Subsequently, when the user connects to the Siebel Remote server (through a modem, LAN, WAN, or other network to include a VPN), these transactions are uploaded from the Mobile Web Client to the server.

Between synchronization sessions, the Siebel Remote server prepares transactions applied to the database server by other users. Siebel Server components then write these transactions to a separate outbox for each mobile user. The transactions—combined with updated, published, or requested marketing literature, correspondence templates, and other types of file attachments—are downloaded to the Mobile Web Client during the next synchronization session.

## **New or Enhanced Capabilities**

Siebel 7.5 includes the following enhanced or new capabilities for Remote and Replication Manager:

- Reduction of enterprise data routed to Mobile Web Clients. This helps to optimize the size of the local databases.
- Filtering workflow processes from the local database that apply only at the regional level. This helps optimize the size for the local databases.

- Enhanced tracing capability that helps with system diagnostics.
- Standardized Status reports added to increase availability of status and diagnostic information.
- Autosynchronization to improve the frequency of synchronization. This reduces the outbox backlog and therefore shortens the average synchronization time for Mobile Web Clients.
- Enhanced routing model support with new local access management for views.
- Language filtering for multilingual deployment.
- Beginning in version 7.5.3, certain enterprise transactions are no longer routed to all mobile users. Instead, they are automatically routed *only* to the mobile users whose local databases contain the data involved in the transactions. The purpose of this change is to reduce synchronization time by eliminating unnecessary data transfers. No configuration is required.

---

**NOTE:** This guide assumes that you have successfully installed your Siebel application and completed the implementation steps described in *Applications Administration Guide*.

---

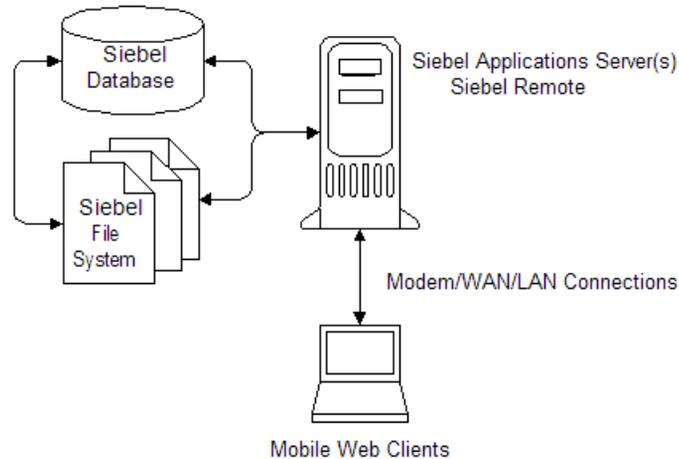
## Siebel Remote Architecture

This section describes the architecture for Siebel Remote and illustrates the process flow.

- [“Elements in Siebel Remote Architecture”](#)
- [“Siebel Remote Flow Diagram” on page 21](#)

## Elements in Siebel Remote Architecture

Figure 1 illustrates major elements in the Siebel Remote architecture.



**Figure 1. Siebel Remote Hardware Architecture**

**Siebel database.** A computer on which the Siebel database resides. Tables in this database store information about your organizational structure, job responsibilities, sales personnel, sales territories, accounts, sales opportunities, and product lines. Other enterprise-wide databases may also reside on this server.

**Siebel File System.** A directory structure that contains the Siebel Encyclopedia items, correspondence templates, file attachments, and other files for client access and download. The Siebel Remote server must have network connectivity to the Siebel File System, which may be located on a Siebel Server, Siebel database server, or other server on the network. For more information on the Siebel File System, see “[Siebel File System](#)” on page 29.

**Database access.** The combination of hardware and software that enables a Siebel Remote server to access the Siebel database server. This connectivity is typically established using an ODBC driver and the database vendor’s specific connectivity package. Due to the volume of data exchanged between the Siebel Remote server and the database server, this access needs to be provided over a 100 MB or faster network connection, such as Fast Ethernet or FDDI.

**Siebel Remote server.** A Siebel Server that runs the Siebel Remote components and manages synchronization sessions with Mobile Web Clients. Each Siebel Remote server manages a distinct group of mobile users who are assigned to that specific server. Other Siebel Server components, such as Assignment Manager and Enterprise Integration Manager, may run on the same Siebel Server.

To maintain a high level of integrity and availability, the Siebel Remote server is an interim storage area for data required to synchronize mobile databases with the Siebel database server. To make sure of the integrity and availability of this data, administrators should implement a redundant disk configuration for the Siebel Remote server. Using redundant disk configuration will reduce the likelihood of losing data on the Remote server caused by malfunctioning hardware. However, if it does occur, a reextract of all Mobile Web Clients registered on the affected Remote server will be necessary.

**Siebel Remote Client.** Siebel Remote client software installed on the Siebel Mobile Web Client. During synchronization, it communicates directly with the Synchronization Manager component on the Siebel Server to synchronize the mobile node with its parent.

Components of Siebel Remote client are (a) Local Database and File System, and (b) Local Database Initialization Program.

**Modem, LAN, or WAN.** The combination of hardware and software that enables a Mobile Web Client to communicate with the Siebel Remote server. Mobile Web Clients must communicate with the Siebel Remote server using the TCP/IP protocol.

**Client.** A computer running the Siebel applications client software. The Mobile Web Client is used for Siebel Remote.

**Siebel Mobile Web Client.** A computer (typically a laptop) that normally operates as a stand-alone unit, with a portion of the server database downloaded to a local database. This technique provides efficient access to the user's specific data. Mobile Web Clients periodically connect to, and communicate with, a Siebel Server using a modem across public telephone lines, LAN or a WAN.

The Siebel Mobile Web Client also runs inside a standard Web browser. However, layers of the Siebel eBusiness Applications architecture, including the local database, reside on the user's personal computer and execute business logic locally. This client requires installation and periodically connects to a server to synchronize the server and the local databases.

## Siebel Remote Flow Diagram

Figure 2 illustrates the Siebel Remote flow process. Numbers in the diagram relate to explanations in Table 4 on page 23. The purpose of this diagram and table is to provide a general overview of the process.

After Table 4 on page 23, there are smaller diagrams for the two parts of the Remote flow process—data downflow (Figure 3 on page 27) and data upflow (Figure 4 on page 28).

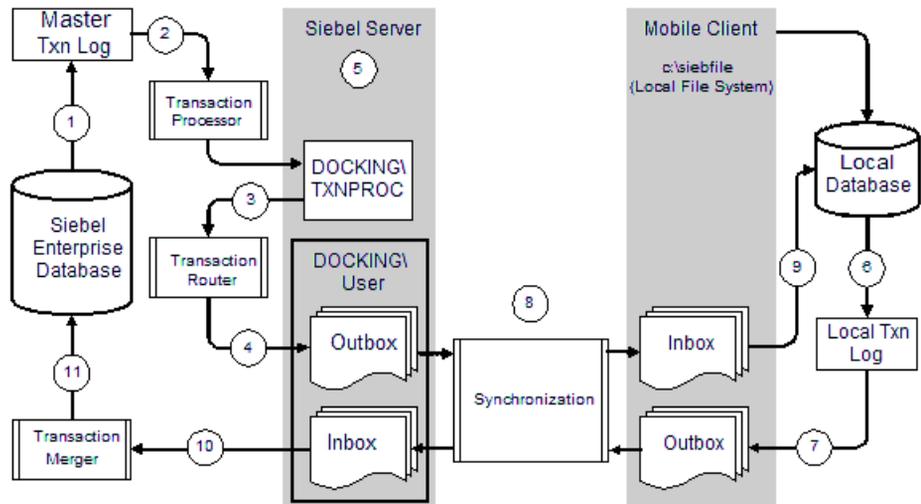


Figure 2. Siebel Remote Flow Diagram

**Table 4. Steps in the Siebel Remote Flow Diagram**

Step	Explanation of the Diagram
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Every action in the Siebel database is considered a transaction.</li><li>■ These include adds, deletes, updates, merges, and so on.</li><li>■ A copy of each transaction is stored in the Master Transaction Log (S_DOCK_TXN_LOG), provided that the transaction is accomplished using Siebel software. Direct SQL modification of Siebel tables is not supported. SQL changes that are executed outside the Siebel application are not recorded in the Master Transaction Log (S_DOCK_TXN_LOG) and therefore will not be routed to mobile clients.</li><li>■ When using EIM to import records to the database, transactions are logged in the File System to improve performance. If Mobile Web Clients will have read/write access to the records imported during a particular EIM session, it is strongly recommended that the administrator use the row-by-row logging method. For additional information about this topic, see <i>Siebel Enterprise Integration Manager Administration Guide</i>.</li><li>■ Transactions are stored at the field level to minimize the size of S_DOCK_TXN_LOG. When Transaction Logging is turned on and an action occurs, only changes to the fields are captured as transactions. This helps to optimize the synchronization process.</li></ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The Transaction Processor picks up the transactions stored in S_DOCK_TXN_LOG and copies them to the Applications Server directory DOCKING\TXNPROC.</li><li>■ The Transaction Processor also picks up some transactions from the file system and copies them to DOCKING\TXNPROC. These file system transactions are of type External File.</li><li>■ After the transactions are copied to Applications Servers, TXNPROC clears the S_DOCK_TXN_LOG of the transactions.</li></ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Transaction Router picks up the transactions from DOCKING\TXNPROC and determines which mobile users should receive them.</li></ul>

**Table 4. Steps in the Siebel Remote Flow Diagram**

Step	Explanation of the Diagram
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The first time Remote Administrator creates a database extract for a remote user, this action triggers the creation of a docking directory on the remote server (a Siebel Server) for that user.</li> <li>■ It creates an inbox and an outbox.</li> <li>■ The outbox stores any future extracts as well as DX files from Transaction Router.</li> <li>■ It then sends these DX files to each Remote client's outbox on the server in the docking directory based upon visibility and routing rules.</li> <li>■ After Transaction Router completes its task, it instructs Transaction Processor to purge the DX files in the DOCKING\TXNPROC directory base on the Transaction Processor's parameter: Clean .dx files iterations.</li> </ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ During implementation of Siebel eBusiness Applications, at least one Siebel Server is designated as a Remote server. It will host all or some of the Remote users.</li> <li>■ This server contains the Docking Directories for remote users to transfer the files involved with the synchronization process. These files include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ New database templates (from the Generate New Database task)</li> <li>■ Database extracts (used with the templates to initialize the local DB)</li> <li>■ DX files (.dx)</li> <li>■ TOC files (.toc)</li> <li>■ Visibility data for the Remote clients (visdata.dbf and dobjinst.dbf)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Remote clients process transactions in their local database while in disconnected mode.</li> <li>■ A copy of each transaction is stored in the Local Transaction Log (similar to the Master Transaction Log on the server side).</li> </ul>
7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ When the user starts the synchronization process, the Remote Client creates DX files from the log and moves these DX files to the Remote client's outbox on the local machine.</li> </ul>

**Table 4. Steps in the Siebel Remote Flow Diagram**

Step	Explanation of the Diagram
8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The synchronization process starts when the Remote client initiates a synchronization session.</li><li>■ Synchronization Manager must be running and will authenticate the Remote client, based upon the type of authentication in the Component Parameters.</li><li>■ The synchronization process includes handling communication between the Mobile Web Clients and the file system.</li><li>■ The process moves the DX files from the docking directory outbox to the Remote client's inbox. It will move files from the Remote client's outbox to the docking directory's inbox.</li><li>■ Any attachments, correspondence, or templates that the Remote client creates are copied to the Siebel File System.</li></ul>
9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Changes do <i>not</i> occur in the server database until the synchronization session finishes and the Mobile Web Client disconnects.</li><li>■ Depending on the user synchronization options or command-line options chosen, the Remote client either begins applying the DX files to the local database as soon as the first transaction file is received, or after it completes the file exchange with the server.</li></ul>
10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Transaction Merger, a component on the server side, pulls the DX files from the inbox within the Docking Directory.</li></ul>
11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Transaction Merger applies the changes to the server.</li><li>■ It also identifies conflicts.</li><li>■ A setting for System Preference, MRG: System Conflict Resolution, specifies whether the server or client wins during conflict resolution. The value can be Server Wins or Client Wins.</li><li>■ Conflicts will be communicated to the Remote user during the next synchronization.</li><li>■ Transaction Merger deletes the DX files from the inbox within the Docking Directory.</li></ul>

Table 5 lists notes on the Siebel Remote flow process (Figure 2 on page 22).

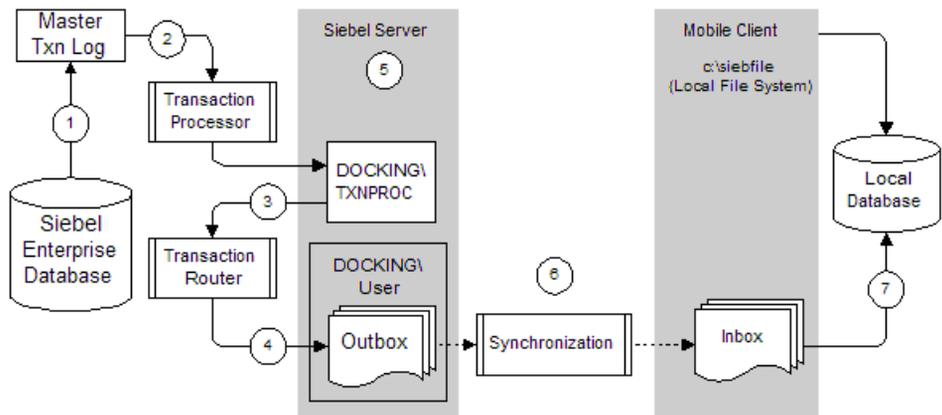
**Table 5. Siebel Remote Flow Diagram Notes**

Topic	Comments
Remote Configuration File	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The DockConnString is the logical Siebel server name. This represents the server where a mobile client was extracted. It should be populated when the client is first initialized.</li> <li>■ An important configuration parameter, AutoStopDB, is part of the Local configuration. Its default is FALSE, which means the local database engine will keep running after Siebel eBusiness Applications shut down. This will help shorten the startup time when the user restarts Siebel eBusiness Applications. If AutoStopDB is set to TRUE, the local database engine will shut down automatically when the Siebel eBusiness Applications shut down.</li> <li>■ In the local database connecting string, -q means the local database is started in quiet mode. This prevents a SQL Anywhere window from showing up. However, a SQL Anywhere icon will appear on the Windows task bar, whether or not the -q parameter is used. This provides the user with a way to manually stop the database engine, if the user leaves the engine running after Siebel eBusiness Applications shut down.</li> <li>■ On the local database connect string, the -m means truncate transaction log after checkpoint; -x NONE means do not load any network drivers; -gp 4096 tells the engine that the database page size is 4,096 bytes; -c40m -ch60m sets the initial cache size to 40 MB, with a maximum of 60 MB. The cache sizes are suggested values that the user can adjust. However, the SQL Anywhere engine will determine the actual cache size within the given range of values.</li> <li>■ In Siebel 7.5, users can specify the sorting order on Local and Sample databases. To enable this feature, users modify their CFG file (for example, siebel.cfg, uagent.cfg). The SortCollation parameter in the CFG file determines the sorting order of the SQL Anywhere database. For more details about this topic, see <i>Siebel Web Client Administration Guide</i>.</li> </ul>

**Table 5. Siebel Remote Flow Diagram Notes**

Topic	Comments
Authentication	<p>A Synchronization Manager component parameter—you identify the type of authentication used during synchronization. Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Siebel.</b> Synchronization Manager will compare the password used to login to the local db to the Sync Password stored in a Siebel table within the server database.</li> <li>■ <b>Siebel/db password.</b> Synchronization Manager will compare the password used to login to the local db to the Mobile Web Client’s user name and password to connect to the server database.</li> <li>■ <b>Operating system password (Win 2000 and UNIX).</b> Synchronization Manager will compare the password used to login to the local db to the operating system password for the user on the application server.</li> </ul>
Synchronization Frequency	<p>Siebel Systems recommends that mobile users synchronize against the server at least daily. There is an automatic mechanism to help enforce frequent synchronization. Users can invoke autosynchronization on their laptops. For more detail about this topic, see <a href="#">“Using Autosynchronization” on page 87</a>.</p>

Figure 3 illustrates the Remote downflow of data. See Table 4 on page 23 for explanation of the numbered steps.



**Figure 3. Remote Down Flow Diagram**

Figure 4 illustrates the Remote upflow of data transactions. See Table 4 on page 23 for explanation of the numbered steps.

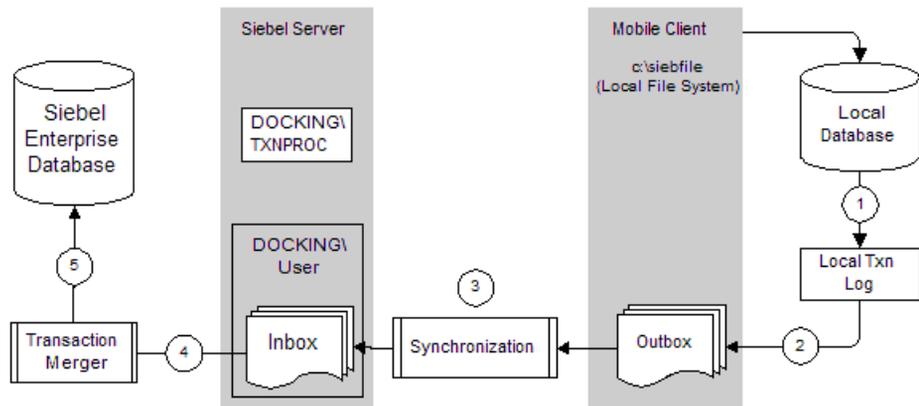


Figure 4. Remote Up Flow Diagram

## Siebel Remote Data Store Components

This section describes the various components that store data used by Siebel Remote:

- “Siebel Database Server”
- “Siebel File System” on page 29
- “Local Database and File System” on page 30

### Siebel Database Server

The database server stores data for users, with both stationary and Mobile Web Clients.

The database server contains:

- Siebel applications metadata
- Siebel applications tables that store user data

- A master transaction log table that stores changes made since the last database extraction, provided that the changes are accomplished using Siebel software. Direct SQL modification of Siebel tables is not supported. SQL changes that are executed outside the Siebel application are not recorded in the Master Transaction Log and therefore will not be routed to mobile clients.

The Transaction Processor and Transaction Router components of Siebel Remote, which run on the Siebel Remote server, route the transactions from the master transaction log to the outbox directories of Mobile Web Clients. The Transaction Processor purges rows from the log after transactions from S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG have been written into DX files in the *txnproc* directory. Do *not* directly modify the contents or structure of the master transaction log under any conditions.

---

**CAUTION:** Truncation of the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table in a Server Database causes the *txn\_id* values assigned to new transactions to be reset. However, the corresponding *txn\_id* values in the S\_DOCK\_STATUS table are not reset. Consequently, new transactions inserted into the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table will have a *txn\_id* mismatch as compared to the values in the S\_DOCK\_STATUS table. Transaction Processor will not process these transactions and will purge them from the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table.

If the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table is truncated, then all Mobile Web Clients must be reextracted and all existing transactions and the local database must be deleted before the these clients can be reinitialized.

---

## Siebel File System

The Siebel File System stores attachments, correspondence, templates, and other types of unstructured data for Siebel users through the File System Manager (FSM). Connected users access files from the Siebel File System. The Siebel Remote server can transfer files between mobile users and the File System during synchronization.

The File System Manager (FSM) server component manages the Siebel File System and handles interplatform security. FSM handles most of the interaction with the Siebel File System within the Siebel applications. However, synchronization manager also interacts with the Siebel File System during synchronization sessions. Web Clients, Dedicated Web Clients, and server components requiring operations on files make requests, through the Server Request Broker, to the FSM.

For more information see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

## Local Database and File System

Mobile Web Clients use a local database to store data for user access. The local database contains Siebel application tables that store user data.

The local database also contains a local transaction log to store transactions created by the mobile user. Siebel Remote forwards these transactions to the Siebel Remote server when the client synchronizes. Do not directly modify the local transaction log under any circumstances. The Siebel Remote synchronization client automatically purges the local transaction log table when appropriate.

---

**NOTE:** Users should run only one instance of a local database at any given time. In addition, users should defragment their hard drives regularly to optimize performance. For further instructions on the defragmentation process, follow your local policies.

Also, the local database is designed for only one user and does not support multiple logins to a single remote database.

---

Mobile Web Clients also use a local Siebel File System to store files from the Siebel File System. Mobile users can request specific files to download to their local File System during synchronization. Also, the Siebel administrator can specify files that should be published or distributed to mobile users. The Siebel Remote server retrieves the files from the Siebel File System and sends them to the local Siebel File System. These files are available when the mobile user disconnects from the Siebel Server.

Files that mobile users add to their local File Systems while disconnected are uploaded to the Siebel Remote server during synchronization. Then the Siebel Remote Server sends these files to the Siebel File System.

# Siebel Remote Client Software

The Siebel Remote client software runs on the Siebel Mobile Web Client and manages the synchronization process between the client and the Siebel Remote server.

Mobile users can start the Siebel Remote client in two ways:

- Background synchronization

While the Siebel client is running, mobile users can choose File > Synchronize Database from the application-level menu. This launches the Siebel Remote client as a background process so that work can continue within Siebel applications or in other Windows applications during the synchronization process.

- Stand-alone synchronization

Mobile users can launch Siebel Remote in stand-alone synchronization mode using the Siebel Remote icon or a third-party scheduling program. This allows users to synchronize without starting the Siebel application. The Auto-Synchronization functionality also uses this method to perform synchronization when it starts a synchronization session

The Siebel Remote client uses the TCP/IP protocol to communicate with the Siebel Remote server over a modem using dial-up networking, a local area network or a wide area network.

The Siebel Remote client connects to the Siebel Remote server; the Siebel Remote server then starts a synchronization session for the Mobile Web Client. Transactions (DX files) and file attachments are sent down to the client machine from the server and up from the client machine to the server.

---

**CAUTION:** In order to operate correctly, each Siebel Remote Client installation must be used with exactly one local database. Do not rename directories that contain Siebel Remote Client software, or attempt to use additional local databases. Do not rename or delete DX files.

---

---

**NOTE:** Transactions are not lost after a client reextract. For information about the Save Client Transactions functionality, see [“Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client” on page 119](#).

---

## Siebel Remote Server Components

This section discusses the Siebel Remote server components that operate on the Siebel Server and provides an overview of the administration tasks you need to perform for each component.

- [“Creating Siebel Server Directories for Mobile Web Clients”](#)
- [“Generate New Database” on page 33](#)
- [“Database Extract” on page 35](#)
- [“Synchronization Manager” on page 35](#)
- [“Transaction Processor” on page 35](#)
- [“Transaction Router” on page 36](#)
- [“Transaction Merger” on page 37](#)

### Creating Siebel Server Directories for Mobile Web Clients

Each registered Mobile Web Client requires a separate directory on the Siebel Remote server. The Database Extract program creates the appropriate directory and its subdirectories for each Mobile Web Client.

---

**NOTE:** The installation program also places a directory called `txnproc` in the docking subdirectory within the Siebel server root directory. Do *not* modify the contents of this directory under any circumstances.

---

The following example shows a portion of the server directory tree after you run Database Extract for Mobile Web Clients named Adams and Scott:

```
siebel
  docking
    adams
      inbox
      outbox
    scott
      inbox
      outbox
  txnproc
```

### Generate New Database

The Generate New Database component creates the local database template for a given database schema version. The component reads the database schema definition from the Siebel repository, then creates Siebel tables and indexes in a database template file stored on the Siebel Remote server in the `dbtempl` subdirectory.

The Local Database Initialization program uses the local database template when initializing a new database on the Mobile Web Client.

---

**NOTE:** Dicdata.dat and diccache.dat are the same dictionary file. Dicdata.dat is named differently for Mobile Web Clients. These files store metadata about schema definitions, vis-rules, and other items.

The Generate New Database component copies diccache.dat to the dbtempl\dicdata.dat file. The dicdata.dat file is downloaded to Mobile Web Clients and used by the synchronization process whenever transactions are applied to the local database.

If you need to interchange the dicdata.dat file between Mobile Web Clients for different languages, contact Siebel Technical Support to determine if the languages are interchangeable.

---

## **Administration of the Generate New Database Component**

You must generate a new database template whenever the Siebel database schema changes in cases such as:

- Immediately upon installing the Siebel database server
- Following an upgrade to a new version of Siebel applications
- Extending the database schema using Siebel Tools—except when using Siebel Anywhere to deliver a database schema upgrade kit

If your deployment requires a different collation template not provided by Siebel eBusiness Applications, please contact Siebel Expert Services for assistance in creating a new collation template.

## **Optimal Size for Local Databases**

The recommended size for the SQL Anywhere local database depends upon several factors. These include the Mobile Web Client user's position and responsibilities. Also, the Data Routing Model assigned to the client impacts the volume of data to be stored in the local database. The local database should not be larger than 700 MB. For further information on this subject, or if a local database will exceed this number, contact Siebel Systems.

### Database Extract

The Database Extract component creates a database snapshot file for a given mobile user. The file contains the data required to initialize the user's local database. Database Extract retrieves data according to routing rules that define the level of access to information for each Mobile Web Client.

### Synchronization Manager

The Siebel Remote server starts a Synchronization Manager task for each incoming synchronization request from a Mobile Web Client. For each request, the Synchronization Manager:

- Verifies the Mobile Web Client status and password (if Siebel Remote authentication is enabled)
- Transfers the local database template and local database extract if applicable
- Exchanges transaction files
- Transfers file attachments to and from the Siebel File Server

Each Synchronization Manager task services only one Mobile Web Client at any one time, but many synchronization tasks can be started concurrently. This behavior is configured by a Synchronization Manager parameter called Max Task. The Synchronization Manager component must be enabled for Siebel Remote mobile users to be able to connect to the Siebel Remote server for synchronization. Synchronization Manager tasks start automatically; you do not need to start tasks for this component manually.

---

**NOTE:** The Siebel File System parameter for Synchronization Manager component determines the file system location for Mobile Web Clients.

---

### Transaction Processor

The Transaction Processor component scans the master transaction log on the Siebel database server and prepares transactions for visibility checking and routing by a transaction router. Transaction Processor leaves the last log entry on DB2 and leaves 1000 on MS SQL to avoid deadlock problems.

You can run only one transaction processor on each Siebel Remote server. Upon start-up, the transaction processor verifies that another transaction processor is not running on the same Siebel Remote server.

## Transaction Router

The Transaction Router performs visibility checking and routing of transactions from the DX files created in the txnproc directory by the Transaction Processor.

### Dock Objects and Routing

Routing rules determine the subset of Dock Object instances that Siebel Remote replicates to each Mobile Web Client. Dock objects are groupings of tables in the database that logically form Siebel business components. Dock objects are similar to business components.

Each dock object is classified according to a visibility level. The three classes are:

- Enterprise
- Limited
- Private

For an Enterprise visibility dock object, Siebel Remote sends all data in the object to the Mobile Web Client. For a Limited visibility object, Siebel Remote sends the object to a Mobile Web Client only if the instance is visible to the mobile user. Private dock objects are not routed to a Mobile Web Client from a Siebel server.

Siebel applications provide preconfigured user routing rules. As delivered, the Siebel routing rules encompass a combination of implicit security rules (based on responsibility) and assignment rules that determine a user's access to information.

If your deployment contains a large number of high level objects such as Assets, Accounts, or Activities, you may want to contact Siebel Expert Services to help reconfigure certain routing rules for optimal performance.

In Siebel 7.5 some Dock Objects were added, and some were dropped from those included in Siebel 7.0.4. Also, some visibility levels were changed. See [Appendix B, "Docking Object Changes"](#) for a listing of detailed changes in Dock Objects.

### Administration of the Transaction Router

You must run at least one transaction router on each Siebel Remote server. For better performance, you should run multiple transaction routers on the same Siebel Remote server.

---

**NOTE:** Changing the definition of organizations (positions and divisions) can cause routers to reevaluate visibility for objects related to the objects that have changed. This can affect the performance of the Transaction Router. To alleviate this situation, reextract all your Mobile Web Client databases.

---

### Transaction Merger

The Transaction Merger component applies transactions to the Siebel database server that were uploaded into the appropriate Application server inbox by a Siebel Remote mobile user. The application of these transactions to the Siebel database takes place *after* the synchronization session finishes and the Mobile Web Client disconnects.

You must run at least one transaction merger on each Siebel Remote server. For better performance, you can run multiple transaction mergers on the same Siebel Remote server.

## Using Siebel Remote

This section provides a high-level overview of the logical steps involved in extracting, initializing, and synchronizing a Siebel Remote mobile user. Procedures for completing each step are covered in other chapters in this guide.

- [“Registering a Mobile User”](#)
- [“Generating a Database”](#)
- [“Extracting a Mobile Web Client” on page 38](#)
- [“Initializing the Local Database” on page 38](#)
- [“Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client” on page 40](#)

- [“How Changes Are Propagated to and from a Mobile Web Client”](#) on page 44
- [“Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client Machine”](#) on page 50

## Registering a Mobile User

Before a mobile user is registered, that person must be in the system as a user. Mobile users typically operate in disconnected mode and synchronize frequently to keep their local databases in balance with the Server database. For information on adding users, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

## Generating a Database

If you are setting up a Siebel Remote server for the first time, you will also need to generate a new database template. Generate a new template by running the Generate New Database component. On the Application server, this component creates a template and places it in the dbtempl directory on the Application server. For information on generating a new database template, see [“Generating a New Database Template”](#) on page 78.

## Extracting a Mobile Web Client

The first step in creating a local database for a new mobile user is to extract the database on the Siebel Remote server. Extract Mobile Web Clients by running the Database Extract component. This component extracts visible data for the mobile user into a snapshot file in the Mobile Web Client’s outbox directory on the Application server.

---

**NOTE:** Each local database is a different entity. Therefore, a user cannot use multiple machines as the same Remote client.

---

## Initializing the Local Database

When users log in and specify the Local database as the data source the first time, Siebel Remote will detect that a local database does not exist. This prompts the user to connect to the Siebel Remote server in order to retrieve it.

This process performs the following tasks:

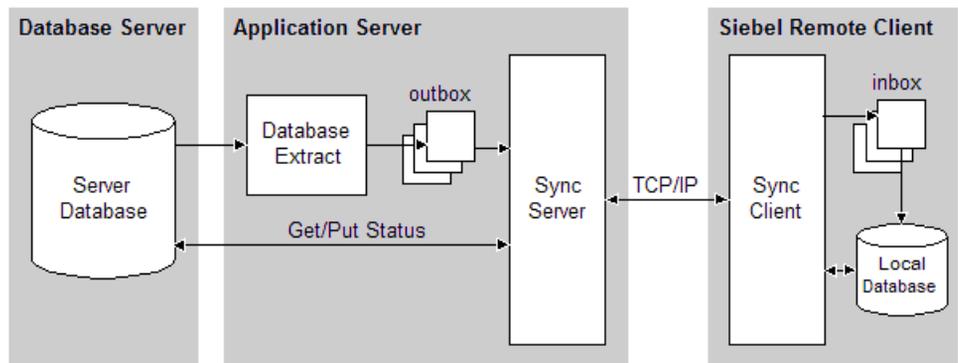
- **Prompts for Mobile Web Client connection information.** Enter the user's name, the Mobile Web Client name (a given user may have multiple Mobile Web Clients, such as two clients on two separate computers), and a confirmation password. If started from the Siebel Mobile Web Client, Siebel Remote uses the username and password entered by the user in the Siebel Mobile Web Client.
- **Connects.** If specified by the user, the synchronization client dials the modem to connect to the application server. The synchronization client connects to the Siebel Server—if the user has access to this server and the Synchronization Manager port is open. Then a new synchronization thread services the Mobile Web Client.

For example, a VPN setup may require the user to enter a special PIN and security token number such as an RSA.

- **Validates Mobile Web Client.** The Synchronization Manager validates the Mobile Web Client's node name against the list of valid users in the server database. The Synchronization Manager also checks that the Mobile Web Client is connected to the correct Siebel Remote server. Finally, if Siebel Remote authentication is enabled, the Synchronization Manager authenticates the Mobile Web Client's password.
- **Checks for database extract.** The Synchronization Manager verifies that a database extract is pending in the application server outbox. During this verification, the Synchronization Manager checks for UAF files (.uaf) and TOC files (.toc) in the mobile user's outbox subfolder. If they are not there, the synchronization client asks the user to contact the Siebel administrator to perform a database extract.
- **Downloads snapshot and file attachments.** If the UAF and TOC files are present, the mobile user will be prompted to download a new database during the synchronization session. The synchronization client downloads the extract and file attachments to the Mobile Web Client's inbox directory.
- **Disconnects.** The synchronization client closes the connection with the Synchronization Manager. The mobile user can disconnect from the network at this point.

- Creates and loads database.** The synchronization client shuts down the Siebel client or Siebel Remote program and starts the Siebel Upgrade Wizard. The Siebel Upgrade Wizard creates a new local database, loads data from the extract file into the local database, and applies file attachments to the local File System.

Figure 5 shows the processes that occur when a local database is initialized.



**Figure 5. Initialize Local Database**

For additional details on initializing the Mobile Web Client database, see [“Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database”](#) on page 129.

---

**NOTE:** In order to load the Mobile Web Client faster, you can enable Siebel QuickStart. Check the box titled Enable Siebel QuickStart on the Siebel Login Screen for the Mobile Web Client. Siebel.exe will be preloaded to the memory at the system login time. Then every subsequent client session will call the existing process instead of creating a new one, until the user disables QuickStart. For more information about QuickStart, see *Siebel Web Client Administration Guide*.

---

## Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client

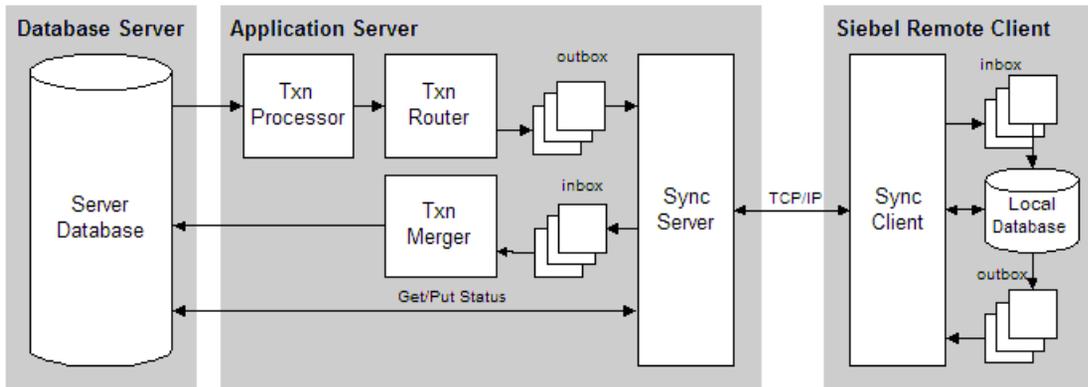
This section describes the processes for synchronizing a Mobile Web Client.

### Routing and Merging

On the Siebel Remote server, the Transaction Router and Transaction Merger components continuously route and apply transactions for Mobile Web Clients. These two tasks process data asynchronously from the synchronization sessions in order to minimize the connection time between the Mobile Web Client and the Siebel Remote server.

- **Transaction router.** One or more transaction router tasks on the application server continuously route outgoing transactions (in the txnproc directory created by the Transaction Processor) to the Mobile Web Client's outbox folders.
- **Transaction merger.** One or more Transaction Merger tasks on the application server continuously merge incoming transactions from the Mobile Web Client's inbox directories to the server database and the Siebel File System.

Figure 6 shows the processes that occur when a Mobile Web Client is synchronized.



**Figure 6. Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client (Routing and Merging)**

### Synchronization Session

To synchronize an existing Mobile Web Client, the mobile user launches Siebel Remote, either from within the Siebel Mobile Web Client or in stand-alone mode. Siebel Remote executes the following steps:

- **Connects.** If specified by the user, Siebel Remote dials the modem to connect to the Siebel Remote server, using connection information from the Windows phone book. Once network connectivity is established, the Siebel Remote client connects to the Siebel Server. If the user is already connected through a LAN or WAN connection, then it merely performs a handshake to validate a network connection exists.
- **Validates Mobile Web Client.** The Synchronization Manager validates the Mobile Web Client's name against the list of valid users in the database server. The Synchronization Manager also verifies that the Mobile Web Client is connected to the correct Siebel Remote server.

If this is not the case, the Synchronization Manager reconnects the Mobile Web Client to another Siebel Remote server and updates the client's local configuration information.

Finally, if Siebel Remote authentication is enabled, the Synchronization Manager authenticates the Mobile Web Client's password.

- **Check for correct version.** The Synchronization Manager checks, against the server, that the Mobile Web Client is running with the most up-to-date version of the application. If not, it will prompt the user to download a new version of the application.
- **Checks for database extract.** The Synchronization Manager checks whether a database extract is pending for the Mobile Web Client. If not, the synchronization session continues. If there is a database extract pending, the synchronization client reinitializes the Mobile Web Client, using the same process described in [“Initializing the Local Database” on page 38](#). Then another synchronization session begins.
- **Retrieves transactions and file attachments.** The client retrieves transaction files—created by the Transaction Router—from the Mobile Web Client's outbox directory on the Siebel Remote server and stores the transaction files in the Mobile Web Client's local inbox directory. The client also retrieves requested, published, or broadcasted file attachments from the Siebel File Server.
- **Sends transactions and file attachments.** The Siebel Remote client extracts pending transactions from the local transaction log into transaction files, and sends the transaction files to the user's inbox directory on the Siebel Remote server.

- **Applies changes to the server database.** Transaction Merger applies the incoming transaction files from the Mobile Web Client's inbox directory on the server to the server database and Siebel File Server.
- **Applies changes to the local database.** The Siebel Remote client applies the incoming transaction files from the Mobile Web Client's inbox directory on the Mobile Web Client to the local database and applies retrieved file attachments to the local file system. The mobile user can use the Siebel client while the Siebel Remote client applies the changes to the local database.

---

**NOTE:** The timing for applying the incoming transactions depends on the options chosen. By default, the client begins applying transactions as soon as the first transaction file has been downloaded. However, you can use command line options or user synchronization options to direct the client to apply transactions only after downloading is complete, or to postpone applying transactions until another time. For more information about command line options, see [“Enabling the Stand-Alone Synchronizer” on page 131](#). For more information about user synchronization options, see *Siebel Web Client Administration Guide*.

---

- **Disconnects.** Siebel Remote then closes the connection with the Siebel Remote server. If the Siebel Remote client created the network connection automatically, it also disconnects the modem; otherwise, the mobile user can manually disconnect from the network at this point.
- **Cleans up.** This refers to those files (.dx) that were successfully applied during the *previous* synchronization session. The Siebel Remote client deletes the transaction files in the Mobile Web Client's local outbox directory that the Transaction Merger successfully applied to the database server during the *previous* synchronization session. On the Siebel Remote server, the Synchronization Manager deletes the transaction files in the Mobile Web Client's outbox directory that were successfully applied to the local database during the *previous* synchronization session.

## **How Changes Are Propagated to and from a Mobile Web Client**

Between synchronization sessions, the Siebel Remote server prepares transactions applied to the database server by other users—mobile and dedicated. Siebel Server components write the transactions to a separate directory for each mobile user. These transactions, combined with items from the File System, are downloaded to the Mobile Web Client during the next synchronization session. Items from the File System include updated, published, or requested marketing literature, correspondence templates, and other types of file attachments.

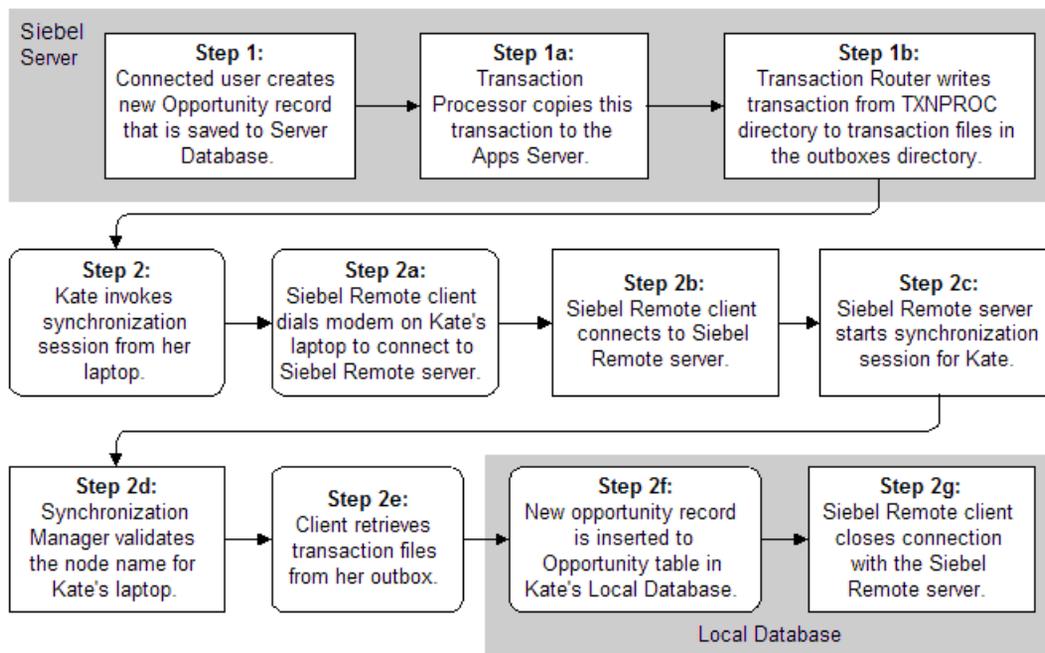
A similar process occurs on the client as well, although without the server component.

### **Process Flow for Changes by Connected Users**

This section describes the process flow for downloading changes on the server database to local databases. The flow takes place from the time a connected user creates a new opportunity until it appears in a local database.

This specific process flow includes an example of a telesales representative in a Call Center. The telesales person talks to potential customers responding to a new advertising campaign.

The telesales person decides to create a new opportunity record for one of the more promising responses. [Figure 7](#) illustrates this flow. The numbers in the diagram correspond to the list immediately following the diagram.



**Figure 7. Process Flow for Changes by Connected Users**

The process flow for the example above includes the following steps:

- 1 The telesales person creates a new opportunity record—a transaction saved in the opportunities table on the server database. A copy is saved to the master transaction log.
  - a Transaction Processor copies this transaction, and others, to the Apps Server.

- b** A Transaction Router task writes each transaction from the TXNPROC directory to transaction files in separate outbox directories for each Mobile Web Client.

The Mobile Web Client outbox directories are stored on the Siebel Remote server.

- 2** A mobile user invokes a synchronization session from the laptop.

During the synchronization session, the following steps occur to download the new Opportunity record to the mobile user's local database:

- a** The Siebel Remote client on the laptop dials the modem to connect to the Siebel Remote server.

This can be handled by an existing modem or LAN connection.

- b** The Siebel Remote client connects to the Siebel Remote server.

- c** The Siebel Remote server starts the synchronization session for the Mobile Web Client.

- d** The Synchronization Manager validates the Mobile Web Client's node name against the list of valid mobile users in the server database.

The Siebel Remote client receives transaction files going to and from the Synchronization server, and retrieves file attachments.

- e** The client retrieves transaction (.dx) files from the user's outbox directory on the Siebel Remote server and stores them in the mobile user's local inbox directory. The client also retrieves the user's requested, published, or broadcasted file attachments from the Siebel File Server.

- f** The new opportunity record is inserted into the Opportunity table in the user's local database.

- g** The Siebel Remote client closes the connection with the Siebel Remote server.

The mobile user can use the Siebel client while the Siebel Remote client applies the changes to the local database.

---

**CAUTION:** Users should never directly modify the local transaction log. The Siebel Remote synchronization client automatically purges the local transaction log table.

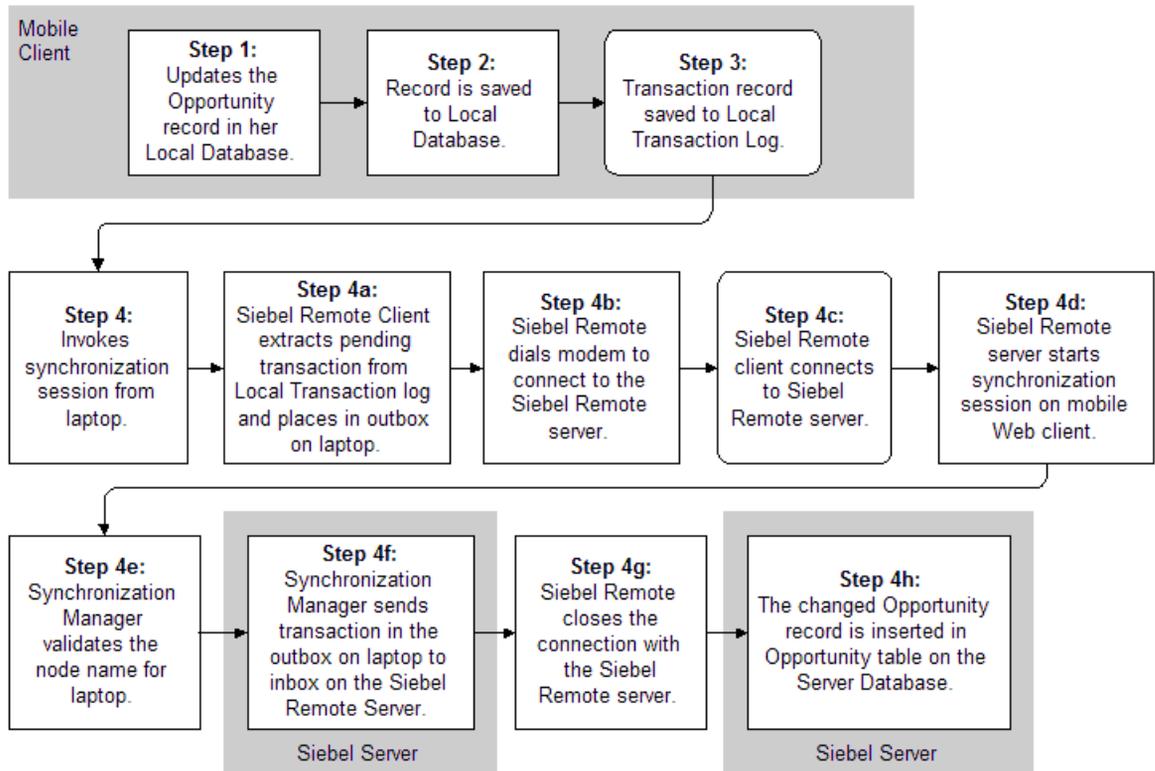
---

### **Process Flow for Changes Made by Mobile Users**

Mobile Web Clients use a local database to store data for user access. The local database contains Siebel eBusiness Applications tables that store user data. The local database also contains a local transaction log to store transactions created by the mobile user. Siebel Remote forwards these transactions to the Siebel Remote server when the client synchronizes.

This section provides a description of each phase of the process flow, from the time when the mobile user modifies the new opportunity until the time when the modifications appear in the Server database. For this example, assume that a mobile user is meeting with a potential new client, represented by the opportunity record entered by the telesales representative in the previous section.

Figure 8 illustrates this flow. The numbers in the diagram correspond to the list following the diagram.



**Figure 8. Process Flow for Changes by Mobile Users**

- 1 As a result of the meeting, the mobile user makes changes to the Opportunity record in the local database on the laptop. The user enters these changes immediately after the meeting while working offline.
- 2 The modified opportunity record is saved to the Opportunities table in the local database. A transaction record is saved to the Local Transaction log.

- 3** The Siebel Remote client extracts pending transactions from the Local Transaction log into transaction files (.dx). The client then places these DX files in the outbox directory on the laptop.
- 4** The mobile user synchronizes the laptop.

During the synchronization session, the following steps occur to record the changes to the opportunity record:

- a** Siebel Remote dials the modem to connect to the Siebel Remote server.  
If the user is in the office, a LAN connection will also work.
- b** Siebel Remote client connects to the Siebel Remote server.
- c** Siebel Remote server starts the synchronization session for the mobile user.
- d** Synchronization Manager validates the Mobile Web Client's node name against the list of valid Mobile Web Clients in the server database.
- e** Synchronization Manager sends the transaction files in the outbox directory on the laptop to the mobile user's inbox directory on the Siebel Remote server.
- f** Siebel Remote closes the connection with the Siebel Remote server.
- g** The changed Opportunity record is inserted into the Opportunity table on the Server database.

### **File Attachments and Siebel Remote**

This section provides additional information about how Siebel Remote handles file attachments.

When a Siebel Remote client attaches a file to a record in the local Siebel database, the meta-data concerning the file is stored in the local Siebel database, and the file is stored in the local Siebel file system. When the client synchronizes with the Siebel Remote Server, normal synchronization procedures result in the file being copied to the server's Siebel file system, and meta-data concerning the file being copied to the server's Siebel database.

If the record to which the file is attached is accessible to another Siebel Remote client, such as another member of a sales team, then ordinarily file meta-data is transferred to that team member's local Siebel database when that team member next synchronizes. However, the file attachment, itself, usually is not transferred to the local Siebel file system until it is specifically requested. (The exception is that certain types of file attachments, such as Literature items, have a Distribution Method setting. If Distribution Method is set to Publish, the file is automatically sent to Siebel Remote users, without needing to be requested.)

A Remote client requests a file attachment by clicking its link in a Siebel application, or by selecting its Request File check box. When this is done, a request for the file is queued. In order to actually receive the file, the client must synchronize again, which will result in the file being copied to the local Siebel file system. Once the synchronization is complete, the client must click the link again to view the file.

## Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client Machine

Mobile users must synchronize frequently to obtain and view possible updates in the server database. Also, there may be updates to the store of documentation, marketing literature, and sales brochures in the file system.

### **To synchronize a Mobile Web Client**

- 1** Start your Siebel application, such as Siebel Sales, in the Siebel program group on the Mobile Web Client machine.
- 2** From the application-level menu, select File > Synchronize Database.
- 3** Choose the synchronization options.

See *Siebel Web Client Administration Guide* for options.

- 4** Click Synchronize.

A progress indicator appears. In any synchronization that includes both upload/download and apply operations, the indicator initially shows the progress of the upload/download operation. When uploading and downloading is complete, the indicator shows the progress of the apply operation.

## Security and Authentication

This section discusses security and authentication for mobile users.

- [“Authentication During Synchronization with Server Database”](#)
- [“Authentication During Normal Operations” on page 52](#)

### Authentication During Synchronization with Server Database

The Siebel Remote Synchronization Manager authenticates incoming Mobile Web Client requests to make sure that a Mobile Web Client is valid.

The Synchronization Manager validates the following information when a Mobile Web Client synchronizes with the server database:

**Mobile Web Client name.** Validates the Mobile Web Client’s name against the list of valid Mobile Web Clients in the server database and validates that the effective end date is valid or NULL.

**Application server.** Verifies that the Mobile Web Client has connected to the correct Siebel Remote server. If the Mobile Web Client connects to the wrong Siebel Remote server, the Synchronization Manager reconnects the Mobile Web Client to another Siebel Remote server and updates the client’s local configuration information.

**Password.** Validates the Mobile Web Client’s password by using one of the following authentication methods, represented by the parameter name. The Siebel administrator specifies the password authentication method in the Siebel Server Component Parameters for Synchronization Manager, and in the appropriate CFG file located at the mobile client.

- **None.** Does not validate the Mobile Web Client’s password. This is the default.
- **Database.** Uses the Mobile Web Client’s user name and password to connect to the server database.

---

**NOTE:** You cannot use the Database authentication model if you have enabled password encryption. This would require the mobile user to use the encrypted password to log into the local database. For more information about password encryption, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

---

- **Siebel.** Verifies that the password is the same password stored in a table in the server database.
- **AppServer.** Verifies that the password is the operating system password for the user on the application server.

## Authentication During Normal Operations

Another situation where mobile users may use password authentication occurs when they are connecting to the local database, which is the normal operation for Mobile Web Clients. The authentication process checks the user password set during client initialization against the Local database.

---

**CAUTION:** The Mobile Web Client does not support third-party or customer proprietary authentication methods.

---

## Locking and Concurrency

The following are concurrency rules and behaviors of the Siebel Remote components:

- A transaction processor can run while any other Siebel Remote server component is running.
- There can be only one transaction processor for each Applications server.
- Only one instance of the Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, Synchronization Manager, or Database Extract can process a given Mobile Web Client at any one time. Two transaction routers, therefore, *cannot* route transactions to the same Mobile Web Client at the same time, nor can two transaction mergers merge transactions from the same Mobile Web Client at the same time. Multiple instances of these components can be running on one Applications server for better performance.
- The Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, or Synchronization Manager cannot process a Mobile Web Client while a database extract is in progress for that Mobile Web Client.

- The Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, and Synchronization Manager, on the same server, can process the same Mobile Web Client at the same time.
- Multiple instances of Database Extract running at the same time allow the extraction of multiple lists of mobile users, thus reducing the overall extract duration.

## Conflict Detection and Resolution

Siebel Remote supports team selling and field service by allowing different mobile users to access data. This creates the possibility that two users may make conflicting changes to the same data when they are disconnected from the server. Siebel Remote automatically detects update conflicts by comparing transactions at the field level. To accomplish this, Siebel Remote uses specific rules to resolve conflicts for three types of database data changes:

- Updating values in an existing row
- Deleting an existing row
- Adding a new row

More complex conflicts involve deleting and adding database rows. One user may change a value in a database row and another may delete the entire row. One user may add a database row to a local database, but the user primary key of the row may be in use by an existing row in the server's database or in another Mobile Web Client's database. Over time, if such changes go undetected or unresolved, the databases on various machines become less synchronized, a phenomenon called *data divergence*. Siebel Remote incorporates conflict detection and resolution logic to prevent data divergence between server and Mobile Web Client databases.

## Update Conflicts

An update conflict occurs if, for example, one user changes a contact's area code to 415 and another user changes it to 408. Siebel Remote detects and consistently resolves conflicts by using one of two rules: *Client Wins* or *Server Wins*. The Client Wins rule states that the Mobile Web Client database value overrides the server database value. The Server Wins rule states that the server database value overrides the Mobile Web Client database value. The default setting, Server Wins, is strongly recommended to resolve such conflicts because data changes will converge more quickly. The Client Wins rule will work as well but will take longer for data to converge.

---

**CAUTION:** To maintain integrity across databases, the same conflict resolution rule must be in effect for client and server databases. You should specify the rule as part of the initial Siebel Remote implementation on your database server, and before running a database extract for any client so that the rule is replicated consistently to the clients.

---

Siebel Remote applies the same logic to databases to make sure that they remain synchronized. During the initial Siebel Remote implementation, the Siebel administrator sets a system preference to reflect which rule is to be in effect.

---

**NOTE:** Mobile Web Client transactions are processed in the order in which the users synchronized. Any successful database update sent from a Mobile Web Client to the server becomes a server transaction for the purpose of conflict resolution.

---

If Siebel Remote rejects an update from a Mobile Web Client, the mobile user can determine whether an update conflict has occurred. If the result of Siebel's conflict resolution is inappropriate, the user can manually reapply the change to the local database. It will be sent to the server again during the next synchronization session when the Mobile Web Client sends database changes to the server. If other changes have not been made to the data value since the last synchronization session, the change will not conflict and will succeed on the server.

## Duplicate Conflicts

Although a user may successfully add a database row to a client database (or the server database), the added transaction may duplicate a new entry in another database residing elsewhere and not yet processed by the server. Siebel Remote determines that a duplicate conflict exists when a new row's user primary key matches that of an existing row.

Because Siebel Remote cannot determine whether the transaction is a true duplicate or simply an erroneous use of the same identifier for two different data entities, Siebel Remote cannot ignore the duplicate transaction. Instead, Siebel Remote adds the new row and sets the column `CONFLICT_ID`, which is normally Zero, to the record's `ROW_ID`. This both indicates that the row is a duplicate and assures a unique value for the `_U1` index. The mobile user can determine whether a duplicate conflict has occurred.

For example, the user might change the user primary key and resubmit the update. As the user resolves the conflict, Siebel Remote captures the database update for transmission to, and resynchronization with, the server during the next synchronization session.

---

**NOTE:** The local database treats null as a unique value and consequently allows duplicates if you leave a key field null for two or more records.

---

The system administrator must monitor and resolve conflicts created on the server. To resolve a duplicate conflict, you can perform a merge on the duplicate records using the user interface Merge Record feature (Edit > Merge Records). The Merge Records option is enabled only after you select more than two records in the applet.

You can also change the user keys of one of the duplicate records to resolve the conflict.

Until these conflicts are resolved, EIM cannot be used to merge the records, since the conflict flag is not reflected in the interface table columns.

## Delete Conflicts

A potential delete conflict arises whenever one of the database changes is to delete a row. A single rule applies to delete operations and overrides other transactions. Whenever Siebel Remote encounters a delete transaction, *delete always wins* whether or not the transaction is in conflict with another update. If one transaction updates a database row and another deletes the row, Siebel Remote ignores the update and deletes the row.

---

**NOTE:** This rule supersedes the System Preferences Conflict Resolution rule set during initial implementation.

---

When detecting delete conflicts, deleted records appear in the User Preferences screen > Remote Status view > Session Actions list after the user synchronizes. However, the deleted records appear only if the system preference MRG: User Friendly Notification is set to TRUE. See [“Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences” on page 58](#) for more information.

## Merge Conflicts

A potential merge conflict arises when records are merged separately on both the Mobile Web Client and the database server. The following example illustrates the problem:

- 1** On the Mobile Web Client, data from account A may be merged with account B.
- 2** On the server database, data from account B may be merged with account A.
- 3** Since delete transactions have the highest priority in Siebel Remote, this may lead to two delete transactions—one from the Mobile Web Client and one from the database server.
- 4** In this case, data from both accounts will be deleted. To avoid this potential problem, do not merge data on Mobile Web Clients.



# Implementing Siebel Remote Server

# 2

This chapter describes actions necessary to prepare the Remote server for use in the production environment. [Table 6](#) includes these tasks.

**Table 6. Tasks for Initial Siebel Remote Implementation**

Task	Where Performed
<a href="#">Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences on page 58</a>	Siebel client application
<a href="#">Choosing Assignment Manager Settings for Siebel Remote on page 66</a>	Use the connected Siebel client application or Server Manager to make the change to this Siebel Remote server setting.
<a href="#">Disabling Local Access to All Views on page 66</a>	Siebel client application
<a href="#">Starting Siebel Remote Server Components on page 67</a>	Siebel Server Manager
<a href="#">Enabling Windows NT Rights on Siebel Remote Server on page 77</a>	Siebel Remote server
<a href="#">Changing the Local Database Administrator Password on page 77</a>	Siebel Remote server
<a href="#">Generating a New Database Template on page 78</a>	Siebel Server Manager

# Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences

Several enterprise-wide preferences affect the way Siebel Remote manages database changes. During the initial implementation, you should use the System Preferences Administration view to set the system preferences.

**NOTE:** It is important to remember that Mobile Web Clients need to be reextracted whenever there is a change to any of the system preferences settings. To determine which changes will be routed to the Mobile Web Clients, check the Dock Object Visibility Rules under the SystemPref Dock Object in Siebel Tools. For more information on Dock Objects and Visibility Rules, please refer to the topic about controlling access to information in *Siebel Tools Reference*.

#### To set Siebel Remote system preferences

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Application Administration > System Preferences.
- 2 In the System Preferences list, select the desired record and enter the appropriate value in the System Preference Value field.

Table 7 lists the Siebel Remote system preferences that you may want to set. For more information about each system preference, see the related section in the following pages.

**Table 7. Siebel Remote System Preferences**

System Preference	Default Value	Other Values
<a href="#">MRG: System Conflict Resolution</a>	Server Wins	Client Wins
<a href="#">MRG: Docking Timestamp Source</a>	Client Transaction Time	Server Database Merge Time
<a href="#">Docking: Transaction Logging</a>	TRUE	FALSE

**Table 7. Siebel Remote System Preferences**

<b>System Preference</b>	<b>Default Value</b>	<b>Other Values</b>
<a href="#">Docking: Get All PostnCon rows</a>	FALSE: Get only S_POSTN_CON rows on primary contact team member, the Mobile Web Client (or subordinate) position for a contact who is visible to the Mobile Web Client.	TRUE: Get all the S_POSTN_CON rows for a contact who is visible to the Mobile Web Client.
<a href="#">CSM Logging</a>	FALSE	TRUE
<a href="#">MRG: Txns Per Commit</a>	50	10 for DB2 10 for Oracle 1 for Microsoft SQL Server
<a href="#">MRG: User Friendly Notification</a>	Conflicts	TRUE FALSE
<a href="#">LOGMGR: Vis Rules Per Statement</a>	50	20 for DB2 20 for Microsoft SQL Server 20 for Oracle 5 for Sybase
<a href="#">DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement 1</a>	20 for DB2 20 for Microsoft SQL Server 20 for Oracle 5 for Sybase	

**Table 7. Siebel Remote System Preferences**

System Preference	Default Value	Other Values
<a href="#">DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement N</a>	1 for DB2 1 for Microsoft SQL Server 1 for Oracle 1 for Sybase	
<a href="#">Enterprise DB Server Code Page</a>	Value is set by the database installer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ utf-8</li> <li>■ utf-16 (includes MS SQL and DB2 only)</li> <li>■ cp1252</li> <li>■ cp932</li> <li>■ cp1148 (for iSeries only)</li> </ul> <p>The following are for development and migration only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ cp847</li> <li>■ cp936</li> <li>■ cp949</li> <li>■ cp950</li> <li>■ cp1250</li> <li>■ cp1251</li> <li>■ cp1253</li> <li>■ cp1254</li> <li>■ cp1255</li> <li>■ cp1256</li> <li>■ cp1257</li> <li>■ cp1258</li> </ul>

## MRG: System Conflict Resolution

Siebel Remote uses one of two rules to resolve conflicting database updates:

- **Client Wins.** Updates from a Mobile Web Client will take precedence and overwrite those already on the server.
- **Server Wins.** Updates from a server will take precedence and overwrite those already on the Mobile Web Client. This is the default value.

These values are case sensitive. You should use the default setting.

## MRG: Docking Timestamp Source

Siebel database table rows include the date a row was last changed. For rows updated by Mobile Web Clients, the date can be stamped with the time when the change was made on the client (client timestamp) or the time when the update was applied to the server (server timestamp):

- Using the client timestamp promotes consistency across client and server databases, but can be misleading if a client's clock is set incorrectly or if the client resides in a different time zone.
- Using the server timestamp makes sure that timestamps are accurate, but causes the timestamps to differ for the same row on the client and the server.
- Setting this preference does not affect Siebel Remote conflict resolution logic or priorities. Updated timestamps are stored for purely informational purposes.
- To select Docking Timestamp Source, choose either Client Transaction Time (the default) or Server Database Merge Time.

## Docking: Transaction Logging

This preference enables or disables docking transaction logging. The default value is TRUE. This value is case sensitive.

---

**NOTE:** You must set this value to TRUE when performing a database extract. Transaction logging must be enabled during extraction to log changes to the local database.

---

The following procedures provide detailed instructions for disabling and enabling transaction logging.

---

**CAUTION:** Disabling Transaction Logging will prevent Siebel Remote from working.

---

#### **To disable transaction logging**

- 1** Navigate to Application Administration > System Preferences.
- 2** In the System Preferences list, select the Docking: Transaction Logging record and set System Preference Value to False.
- 3** Restart the Siebel server.

#### **To enable transaction logging**

- 1** Navigate to Application Administration > System Preferences.
- 2** In the System Preferences list, select the Docking: Transaction Logging record and set System Preference Value to TRUE.

The following steps must also be completed whenever the value of Docking: Transaction Logging is changed from FALSE to TRUE:

- 3** Restart the Transaction Processor with TS DB Recreate set to True.

This restores transaction logging and rebuilds the dobjinst.dbf file to make sure that correct, up-to-date information about the data in the database is cached. For information about starting the Transaction Processor, see [“Starting Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 67](#).

---

**CAUTION:** If the dobjinst.dbf file is not rebuilt when Transaction Logging is enabled, Mobile Web Clients may experience data discrepancies or visibility problems.

---

- 4 For each active Mobile Web Client in your system (that is, any Mobile Web Client who has no End Date set), reextract and reinitialize that client's local database to make sure that it contains up-to-date data.

This is necessary because any transactions that occur while Transaction Logging is set to False are not logged, and thus are not routed to the Mobile Web Clients that would otherwise receive them, even after Transaction Logging is set to True again.

When using the Assignment Manager or EIM and Docking: Transaction Logging is set to TRUE (default), all the changes will be logged and the appropriate ones will be propagated to the Remote clients. The changes are all logged into the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table.

With a large volume of data, it may take quite a long time for the Transaction Processor and Router tasks to process the changes for each of the Remote clients. It may take so long that it would be faster to reextract the Mobile Web Client and apply the extract remotely.

Therefore, it is recommended that you turn off transaction logging when loading data using EIM to avoid the rapid expansion of the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table. After, the data has been loaded and assigned, turn on transaction logging and reextract the mobile clients. This will also prevent the risk of overloading of the Transaction Processor and Router processes.

In general, bigger batches tend to enhance performance for EIM, but cause problems for Siebel Remote. If you are using both EIM and Siebel Remote, it is recommended that you limit batch sizes to 1000 or fewer records.

## **Docking: Get All PostnCon rows**

Tells the Transaction Router and Database Extract components whether or not to get all records in the S\_POSTN\_CON table for a contact. This parameter is designed to improve Siebel Remote performance. The default value is FALSE, which means "Only get the row for the mobile user's position."

Use this parameter with caution, because sometimes S\_POSTN\_CON table can become quite huge on a local database. If you do change this parameter, you need to reextract mobile users. Also, you need to restart transaction routers.

### CSM Logging

Turns on logging of merge transactions. These are transactions created when connected users combine or merge two records of the same component, such as two opportunities into one. Information from this log can be used to relink orphaned records created when the merge process is crossed with an update process during a synchronization. This is only applicable if the installation uses Siebel Remote or Replication Manager.

### MRG: Txns Per Commit

The value for this preference determines how many database transactions the Transaction Merger processes before it issues a database commit:

- Setting a low value (1) reduces the frequency with which users encounter a locked database row and reduces the risk of deadlock.
- Setting a high value (10) minimizes processing overhead.
- For default values see [Table 7 on page 58](#).

### MRG: User Friendly Notification

This value determines whether Siebel Remote writes information about database updates to the Siebel Remote Status view on the Mobile Web Client:

- The values are case sensitive.
- If the value is TRUE, Siebel Remote writes information about database updates.
- If the value is CONFLICTS, Siebel Remote writes information about database updates that caused conflicts.
- If the value is FALSE, Siebel Remote does not write any information about database updates.

## LOGMGR: Vis Rules Per Statement

Sets the number of visibility or routing rules to be checked by the Transaction Router server component per SQL statement. For default values see [Table 7 on page 58](#).

---

**NOTE:** Do not change this value unless instructed by Siebel Technical Services.

---

## DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement 1

Sets the number of visibility or routing rules checked per SQL statement processed by the Database Extract component—for the first SQL statement with header information. For default values see [Table 7 on page 58](#).

---

**NOTE:** Do not change this value unless instructed by Siebel Technical Services.

---

## DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement N

Sets the number of visibility or routing rules checked per SQL statement processed by the Database Extract component for other SQL statements. For default values see [Table 7 on page 58](#).

---

**NOTE:** Do not change this value unless instructed by Siebel Technical Services.

---

## Enterprise DB Server Code Page

Siebel 7.5 supports non-Unicode code pages for the server database, while the local database only supports Unicode. This parameter is used by the Mobile Web Client to prevent mobile users from entering noncompatible-character-set data into the local database. The value of this parameter should be set to match the character set of the server database. Values for this parameter include: utf-8, utf-16, cp1252, cp932, and cp1148 (for iSeries only). Utf-8 and utf-16 are for Unicode, cp1252 for English and most western European languages, and cp932 for Japanese. For default values, see [Table 7 on page 58](#).

# Choosing Assignment Manager Settings for Siebel Remote

Assignment Manager settings can affect which transactions are sent to a Siebel Remote client. In normal operation, Assignment Manager frequently updates the timestamps for large numbers of records, even if there are no other changes to many of those records. To avoid sending large numbers of transactions to a Siebel Remote client when the only change is to the timestamp, it is recommended that you set the LogTxnChgOnly parameter for the Assignment Manager component to TRUE.

When the LogTxnChgOnly parameter is set to TRUE, Assignment Manager transactions are logged only when there is a net change in assignments, such as a change in the membership of a team or a change in the primary for a team. This parameter only affects the Assignment Manager transactions, so record changes made by other means are logged and sent to Siebel Remote clients normally.

For information about configuring Assignment Manager component parameters, see *Siebel Assignment Manager Administration Guide*.

## Disabling Local Access to All Views

If the tables associated with the business objects have limited visibility, you should not allow mobile users to use any of the All views when connected to a Siebel Remote local database. The Siebel client attempts to fix foreign key relationships when displaying data. Siebel Remote sends this change to the server database and other Mobile Web Clients. This will corrupt the integrity of these databases.

An example using one of the All views illustrates this behavior, which is inherent in any of the All views.

The All Opportunity List view resets the value of an opportunity's primary account to NULL if the Siebel client cannot locate the account in the local database. Siebel Remote may replicate an opportunity to a local database because the opportunity is referenced by an activity owned by the mobile user. Siebel Remote replicates the opportunity so that the Siebel client can display the opportunity's name with the activity in the Activity List view. However, Siebel Remote does not replicate the opportunity's primary account if the mobile user is not a member of the opportunity's sales team. Thus, if the mobile user employs the All Opportunity List view to display the opportunity, and the Siebel client does not find the opportunity's primary account in the local database, Siebel Remote resets the opportunity's primary account value to NULL and replicates this change to other databases.

**To disable local access to the All Opportunity List view**

- 1** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Application Administration > Views.
- 2** In the Views list, select the appropriate view such as the All Opportunity List view and clear the Local Access check box.

Because this is an example that applies to All views, repeat this procedure for any of the responsibilities assigned to this user.

## Starting Siebel Remote Server Components

Use Siebel Server Manager to set values for start-up parameters for the following Siebel Remote server components:

- [Transaction Processor](#)
- [Transaction Router](#)
- [Transaction Merger](#)
- [Synchronization Manager](#)

The default parameter values for each component are described in the following sections.

The following procedures describe how to configure these server components.

#### **To start Transaction Processor – *srvrmgr* command line**

- From the *srvrmgr* command line, enter:

```
start task for comp txnproc with <parameter1>= <value1>,  
<parameter2>=<value2>,...
```

Values are from [“Start-Up Parameters for Transaction Processor”](#) on page 69.

---

**NOTE:** When logging into *srvrmgr* command line, indicate the server name. Otherwise *srvrmgr* will default to the Enterprise Server. For details regarding the Server Manager command-line interface, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

---

#### **To start Transaction Processor – GUI**

- In Siebel 7, the Transaction Processor cannot be started manually through the GUI Server Manager unless the Siebel Server is up and running. The component has been defined to start one task when the Siebel Server is started if the component is enabled. If the component is not started, navigate to Site Map > Server Administration > Servers > Server Components tab, and start the component. A new task should be started.

#### **To start Transaction Router – *srvrmgr* command line**

- From the *srvrmgr* command line, enter:

```
start task for comp txnrout with  
<parameter>=<value>,<parameter2>=<value2>,...
```

Values are from [“Start-Up Parameters for the Transaction Router”](#) on page 72.

#### **To start Transaction Router – GUI**

- In Siebel 7, the Transaction Processor cannot be started manually through the GUI Server Manager unless the Siebel Server is up and running. The component has been defined to start at least one task when the Siebel Server is started if the component is enabled. If the component is not started, navigate to Site Map > Server Administration > Servers > Server Components tab, and start the component. A new task should be started.

#### **To start Transaction Merger – *srvrmgr* command line**

- From the *srvrmgr* command line, enter:

```
start task for comp txnmerge with
<parameter>=<value>,<parameter2>=<value2>,...
```

Values are from [“Start-Up Parameters for Transaction Merger”](#) on page 74.

**To configure Transaction Merger – GUI**

- In Siebel 7, the Transaction Processor cannot be started manually through the GUI Server Manager unless the Siebel Server is up and running. The component has been defined to start at least one task when the Siebel Server is started if the component is enabled. If the component is not started, navigate to Site Map > Server Administration > Servers > Server Components tab, and start the component. A new task should be started.

**To configure Synchronization Manager - *srvrmgr* command line**

- Synchronization Manager is started automatically by the Siebel Server using the default configuration. It does not need an explicit configuration. For information on using Siebel Server Manager to manage and administer server components, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

## Transaction Processor

[Table 8](#) shows the start-up parameters for the Transaction Processor.

**Table 8. Start-Up Parameters for Transaction Processor**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Comments and Default Value
Sleep Time	SleepTime	Optional	Time (in seconds) to sleep between iterations. When it wakes up, it will process transactions. The default is 60.
Maximum Reads per Iteration	MaxRead	Optional	Maximum number of operations to read per run. The default value is 0, which means it will read all outstanding operations in the Master Transaction Log.

**Table 8. Start-Up Parameters for Transaction Processor**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Comments and Default Value
Clean txns iterations	CleanTxnsIter	Optional	Sets frequency for Txn Processor to delete txns from server database master txn log table. This parameter is specified in the number of iterations. Default is 10.
Clean .dx files iterations	CleanFilesIter	Optional	Sets frequency for Txn Processor to delete DX files from the Siebel server's DOCKING\TXNPROC directory. The default is 1 iteration, default of 60 seconds per iteration as shown in SleepTime parameter.
Write compressed .dx files	WriteCompressed	Optional	Writes DX files in compressed format. Default is FALSE and should <i>not</i> be changed unless advised by Siebel Technical Support or Siebel Expert Services.
TS Block Size	TSBlockSize	Optional	Block size for dobjinst.dbf (visibility database) in bytes. Data is stored blocks. The block size here is different from Operating System block size. It is determined during dbxtract for a Mobile Web Client. The default is 4096 bytes. Please do not modify this parameter without approval from Expert Services or Technical Support.

**Table 8. Start-Up Parameters for Transaction Processor**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Alias</b>	<b>Required/Optional</b>	<b>Comments and Default Value</b>
TS Cache Size	TSCacheSize	Optional	Cache size for dobjinst.dbf (visibility database) in kilobytes. The default is 4096 kilobytes. Please do not modify this parameter without approval from Expert Services or Technical Support.
TS DB Recreate	TSDbRecreate	Optional	The default value is FALSE. If the parameter is set to TRUE, Txnproc will recreate its dobjinst.dbf (visibility database). It is necessary to do this because an older dobjinst.dbf database (file system recovery) will mismatch with the server database. The new one resolves the mismatch.

### Transaction Router

The Transaction Router calculates visibility for transactions and routes data to mobile users. [Table 9](#) shows selected parameters for the Transaction Router.

**Table 9. Start-Up Parameters for the Transaction Router**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
Sleep Time	SleepTime	Optional	Time to sleep between iterations (in seconds). The default is 60.
Maximum writes per file	MaxWrite	Optional	Maximum number of operations written per DX file. The default is 5000.
Maximum reads per iteration	MaxRead	Optional	Maximum number of operations processed by the Transaction Router for a given mobile user during each run. The default is 10000.
Set Application Server Name	SetAppName	Optional	Upgrades Mobile Web Clients from previous versions of Siebel eBusiness Applications to v4.0 and above. The default is TRUE.  At start-up, the transaction router searches the server database for Mobile Web Clients whose Siebel Remote server value is not set and that have a docking directory on the local server. This parameter sets the application server name in the server database for each of these Mobile Web Clients.
Write compressed .dx files	WriteCompressed	Optional	Write DX files in compressed format. The default is TRUE.
TS Cache Size	TSCacheSize	Optional	Cache size for dobjinst.dbf database in kilobytes. The default is 2048 kilobytes. Maximum value should not exceed the number of mobile users on the application server multiplied by the size of the largest dobjinst.dbf file.

**Table 9. Start-Up Parameters for the Transaction Router**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Alias</b>	<b>Required/Optional</b>	<b>Default Value and Usage Notes</b>
Read client list iterations	ReadClientsIter	Optional	The number of runs before the Transaction Router refreshes the list of users it should be processing from the database. The default is 10 iterations.
Id Db Recreate	IdDbRecreate	Optional	Recreates the visibility ID database, visdata.dbf. It is a cache storage for data required for the visibility check. The default is FALSE, which means it does not recreate the database every time Txnroute starts.
Id Db Size	IdDbSize	Optional	Size of the visibility ID database, visdata.dbf. This parameter is used only when no visdata.dbf file is present, or when Id Db Recreate is set to True. The default is 10MB, which is optimal in most cases. Maximum value should not exceed 200 MB.
Node Division Factor	NodeDivFactor	Optional	Determines the maximum number of mobile users to process by a Transaction Router instance during every run. The component will process the fractional number of users computed using this parameter. For example, if the value of this parameter is 5 (the default) and there are 100 mobile users on the Application server, the component will process 100/5 or 20 users.
Maximum seconds per iteration	MaxSecs	Optional	Determines the longest duration that a Transaction Router instance will work on one mobile user during each run. The default is 300 seconds.

### Transaction Merger

Table 10 shows selected parameters for the Transaction Merger.

**Table 10. Start-Up Parameters for Transaction Merger**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
Error Mode	ErrorMode	Optional	Determines how database errors are handled during a Transaction Merger process. Default is STOP. Available modes include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ STOP. Stops Transaction Merger.</li><li>■ IGNORE. Causes Transaction Merger to sleep if all nodes were ignored in an iteration.</li><li>■ DISABLE_NODE. Disables all nodes and stops Transaction Merger if an error recurs in the same row. If the mode is set to DISABLE_NODE, Transaction Merger sets the effective end dates of clients with errors to the current time. You then need to reextract the Mobile Web Clients to reactivate them.</li></ul>
Sleep Time	SleepTime	Optional	Time to sleep between iterations (in seconds). Default is 60.

## Synchronization Manager

Table 11 shows the start-up parameters for the Synchronization Manager.

**Table 11. Selected Synchronization Manager Start-up Parameters**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
Authentication Method	Authentication	Optional	<p>Method that Siebel Remote uses to authenticate Mobile Web Clients. The default is None.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>None.</b> Does not validate the Mobile Web Client's password.</li> <li>■ <b>Database.</b> Uses the Mobile Web Client's user name and password to connect Mobile Web Clients to the server database.</li> <li>■ <b>Siebel.</b> Validates the Mobile Web Client's password against the password stored in the Mobile Web Client's screen.</li> <li>■ <b>AppServer.</b> Validates the password against the password on the Siebel Server operating system.</li> </ul> <p>The Mobile Web Client's NT password cannot contain lowercase letters.</p>
Domain Name	NTDomain	Optional	<p>If you are using AppServer authentication, this parameter specifies the name of the Windows NT domain for the user name and password.</p> <p>To use Windows NT password authentication, you must enable the Windows NT user rights for the Siebel Server.</p>
Minimum Number of cached thread contexts	MinCtxCache	Optional	<p>Minimum number of cached thread contexts maintained by a multithreaded server. The default is 2 cached contexts.</p>
Maximum Number of cached thread contexts	MaxCtxCache	Optional	<p>Maximum number of cached thread contexts maintained by a multithreaded server. The default is 10 cached contexts.</p>
Maximum Task Number	MaxTasks	Optional	<p>Maximum number of synchronization sessions Synchronization Manager can service simultaneously. Default is 100.</p>

**Table 11. Selected Synchronization Manager Start-up Parameters**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
Synchronization Port Number	SyncPort	Optional	The TCP/IP port number dedicated to the Synchronization Manager. Default value is 40400. Use the Siebel Server Administration screens to override the default value by specifying a value and restarting the Siebel Server. You can also specify this port number as a command-line option when starting this server component via Server Manager using the command-line interface.
Siebel File System	FileSystem	Optional	Siebel File System location for Mobile Web Clients.
Encryption Type	Crypt	Optional	Determines if the traffic of a synchronization session will be encrypted. Values are: RSA, MSCRYPTO, and NONE.

The multithreaded Synchronization Manager maintains a collection of open database connections (context cache) that can be parceled out to the active task threads and be reused. By default, each server creates two connections during start-up. Additional contexts may be created dynamically, but the server (by default) maintains a maximum of only 10 context caches.

You can specify the minimum cache size using the MinCtxCache parameter and the maximum cache size using the MaxCtxCache parameter. A larger cache may be helpful for configurations where multiple Mobile Web Clients synchronize. Note, however, that an excessive number of inactive database connections can degrade system performance.

The Synchronization Manager creates the number of cached contexts specified by the MinCtxCache parameter at start-up. A cached context decreases the time to initialize a new synchronization session. Increase the cache size if you have a large number of Mobile Web Clients to synchronize simultaneously.

The Synchronization Manager can service up to the MaxTasks number of synchronization sessions simultaneously, but it only keeps at most the MaxCtxCache number of cached contexts in memory.

## Enabling Windows NT Rights on Siebel Remote Server

The Administrator will need to enable Windows NT rights for the sadmin user on the Application servers. This section describes how to do this. See *Siebel Server Administration Guide* for more information.

This procedure is generally required for any Siebel server, not just Siebel Remote.

### **To enable the Windows NT user rights on the Siebel Remote server**

- 1** From the application-level menu, choose Start > Programs > Administrative Tools > User Manager.
- 2** Choose Policies > User Rights.
- 3** Select the Show Advanced User Rights check box and then Act as part of Operating system (the Grant To field shows the current owner).
- 4** Click Add.
- 5** In the Add Users and Groups dialog box, click Show users.
- 6** Scroll to the appropriate name in the Names list, select the name, and click Add.  

You only need to add the Act as part of Operating system user right to the user who will start the Siebel Remote server. You can add rights for domain users, such as HQ\Smith, or you can add local users.
- 7** Click OK and exit User Manager.
- 8** Log out and reboot to activate the new rights.

## Changing the Local Database Administrator Password

In some cases, you may want to change the local DBA password on Mobile Web Clients. To accomplish this task, you should change the DBA password in the database template file before generating the new database template.

The following procedure shows how to accomplish this task in the SQL Anywhere environment.

#### To change the local DBA password on Mobile Web Clients

- 1 In a DOS window on the server machine, run the Interactive SQL utility: dbisqlc.exe.
  - a At the DOS prompt, change to the \bin subdirectory within the Siebel server root directory:

```
cd \siebel_server_root\bin
```

- b Run dbisqlc.exe by entering:

```
dbisqlc -c "UID=DBA;PWD=SQL;DBF=siebel\dbtempl\my_templ.dbf"
```

- 2 In the Command window, enter:

```
grant connect to user_id identified by new_password
```

For example, to set a new password of SQL2 for the user DBA, enter:

```
grant connect to DBA identified by SQL2
```

---

**NOTE:** You must use uppercase for every password in SQL Anywhere.

---

- 3 Click Execute.
- 4 Run the Generate New Database component using the new DBA password.

For information on running the Generate New Database component, see [“Generating a New Database Template” on page 78](#).
- 5 Run a Database Extract for Mobile Web Clients, and notify mobile users to initialize their databases.

For information about initializing a local database, see [“Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database” on page 129](#).

## Generating a New Database Template

You must run the Generate New Database Template component to create a new database template when you:

- Upgrade the server database.
- Want to use a collating sequence other than the default.
- Use Database Extensibility to add extension tables, extension columns, or extension indexes to the default Siebel schema. In this case, run the Database Template Utility each time you click the Apply button in the Siebel Schema screen.

---

**NOTE:** When you create a new extension column in the Siebel schema, and define the Datatype as Character (CHAR), there may be padding issues with Remote. Specifically, TxnMerge may not work properly if the Datatype is CHAR with a length of more than 1. Use VARCHAR as the Datatype if its length is more than 1.

---

## Creating a New Empty Database File

Beginning with Siebel 7.5, Siebel applications only support a Unicode local database. Thus, only the Unicode database template file sse\_utf8.dbf is shipped with the application. With this database template, every collating sequence can be supported. The sorting sequence for the application is configured using a parameter SortCollation in the CFG file. If the parameter is not specified, the application will sort using the Unicode multilingual collation order. No other character set is supported for the local database.

---

**NOTE:** Some previous versions of Siebel Remote supported the creation of new empty database files through the use of a utility called dbinit, which was designed for use with SQL Anywhere databases. Siebel Systems no longer supports the use of this dbinit utility.

---

## Running the Generate New Database Component

You should always use an SQL Anywhere transaction log file when creating the database template. The SQL Anywhere transaction log significantly reduces the time required to create the database template.

Use the Siebel Server Manager to run the Generate New Database component.

#### **To generate a new database template (GenNewDb)**

- 1** From the application-level menu, choose View > Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Operations.
- 2** Click the Component Requests tab.
- 3** Click New.
- 4** In the Component /Job field, select Generate New Database.
- 5** Specify the server name in the Server field.
- 6** In the Component Request Parameters list, click New.
- 7** In the Name field, select SQL Anywhere Database from the pick list.  
The Value field typically defaults to sse\_utf8.dbf and appears automatically.
- 8** Modify the values of other parameters as necessary by repeating [Step 6](#) and [Step 7](#).

[Table 12 on page 81](#) lists the parameters and default values for the Generate New Database component.

You should set the UseDdlFile parameter to FALSE only when you run the Generate New Database component after a schema change.

- 9** In the Component Requests form, click the menu button and then click Submit request.

A new database file is generated. Typically, this take a few minutes.

Table 12 shows the start-up parameters for generating new database components.

**Table 12. Selected Parameters for the Generate New Database Component**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
SQL Anywhere Database	DbfFile	Required	SQL Anywhere database filename to initialize. It is recommended that you use the default value, sse_utf8.dbf. This Unicode file is provided with the system and supports all languages.
DBA Password	DbnPwd	Optional	Password for the DBA account. Default for SQL Anywhere is SQL. Set the DbnPwd parameter to the password for the DBA user ID in the empty database template file.
Table Space	TSpace	Optional	Space name in DB template to store Siebel tables. Do not specify the Table Space parameter unless you intend to build a custom empty database file using the specified table space.
Index Space	ISpace	Optional	Space name in DB template to store Siebel indexes. Do not specify the Index Space parameter unless you intend to build a custom empty database file using the specified index space.
Use Transaction Log File	UseTxnLog	Optional	Use when creating a new template file. The default is TRUE.
Use DDL File	UseDdlFile	Optional	Use when creating a new template file. The default is FALSE—it means that the schema is read directly from the database. If the value is set to TRUE, it means the schema is read from the DDL file. When a schema change takes place in your environment, set the UseDDLFile parameter to FALSE. GenNewDb will then read the latest schema from the database rather than the DDL file.
Interface Tables	IFaceTbls	Optional	Create interface tables and indexes. The default is FALSE.

**Table 12. Selected Parameters for the Generate New Database Component**

Name	Alias	Required/Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
Warehouse Tables	WarehouseTbls	Optional	Create Warehouse tables and indexes. The default is FALSE.
Client Db Type	ClientDbType	Optional	Client database engine type. The default is SQL Anywhere.

## Distributing Database Templates to Siebel Remote Servers

If your deployment includes multiple Remote servers, this section describes how to distribute the database templates. You can distribute it to each Siebel Server by running the `distmpl` utility. This utility creates the proper directory on each Siebel Server and copies the database template into the directory.

Alternatively, run the generate new database component at each Siebel Remote server to create the necessary database template file.

### To invoke `distmpl`

- 1 In a DOS window, run the `siebenv.bat` file to set the appropriate environment variables.
- 2 Invoke `distmpl.bat` to create the destination directories and the database template files.

### Example 1

```
Enter: distmpl \\apssrvr1\siebapp
```

where `apssrvr1` is the machine name of the remote server and `siebapp` is the remote server's directory.

### Example 2

```
Enter: distmpl s:\siebapp
```

where `s:` is the drive on which the remote server's disk is mounted and `siebapp` is the remote server's directory.

## Setting Up Mobile Web Clients

# 3

Setting up a Mobile Web Client involves certain tasks for both the Siebel Remote server and the Mobile Web Client. This chapter discusses the required tasks and how to perform them. You must repeat each of these steps for each Mobile Web Client.

Whenever possible, you should implement the entire process of enabling new Mobile Web Clients, rather than relying on end users to finish the configuration.

The table below includes the required tasks for setting up Mobile Web Clients.

**Table 13. Tasks for Enabling Mobile Web Clients**

<b>Task</b>	<b>Where Performed</b>
<a href="#">Setting Up Mobile Web Client Hardware and Software on page 84</a>	Mobile Web Client
<a href="#">Enabling Network Connectivity on page 84</a>	Mobile Web Client
<a href="#">Establishing Autodial Preferences on page 84</a>	Mobile Web Client
<a href="#">Setting Synchronization Preferences on page 85</a>	Mobile Web Client
<a href="#">Using a Different Data Source on page 90</a>	Mobile Web Client
<a href="#">Registering a Mobile Web Client on page 91</a>	Siebel Server Manager
<a href="#">Using Routing Models on page 96</a>	Siebel Server Manager
<a href="#">Limiting Views Available to Mobile Web Clients on page 114</a>	Siebel Server Manager
<a href="#">Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges on page 117</a>	Siebel Remote server

# Setting Up Mobile Web Client Hardware and Software

Install the necessary hardware and software on the Mobile Web Client. This step may include configuring users. You should not change the ODBC code page settings from multiple byte to single byte.

For more information, see *Siebel Web Client Administration Guide*.

## Enabling Network Connectivity

Install the necessary hardware and software on the Mobile Web Client to allow the this client to exchange files with the Siebel Remote server. This step may include choosing communication settings and installing networking cards, modems, and software.

For more information, see *Siebel Web Client Administration Guide* and *System Requirements and Supported Platforms*.

## Establishing Autodial Preferences

If using Microsoft dial-up networking, mobile users can set an option to automatically connect with their Siebel Remote server when synchronizing.

### **To establish autodial preferences**

- 1** From the application-level menu, select File > Synchronize > Database.
- 2** In the Siebel Remote Synchronize dialog box, click Setup.
- 3** From the Siebel Remote Preferences dialog box, click the Connection picklist and choose the appropriate connection.

- 4 Click OK, and then Synchronize or close the dialog box.

---

**NOTE:** You must first define your phone book entries using Microsoft Dial-Up Networking for Windows 2000, NT, and 98/95 platforms; there is a special situation with the Windows 98/95 setup.

When setting up the dialup connection on Win98/95, you must establish the connection before using Siebel Remote to synchronize.

---

## Setting Synchronization Preferences

This section describes synchronization preferences. The Siebel Remote client reads configuration parameters in the Siebel configuration file (default is `siebel.cfg`) to specify the location of the Siebel Server directories, the Siebel File Server directories, and the Siebel Database installation. If a different CFG file is used, the shortcut created by the Installer should be changed.

Before using Siebel Remote, you must set the values for the configuration parameters. The Siebel installation utility creates a `siebel.cfg` in the client bin directory with default values for each configuration parameter.

If synchronization is performed within the application, that is, using File > Synchronize > Database, configuration information is read from the CFG file of that particular application. For example, if Siebel Call Center is used, then configuration information is read from `uagent.cfg`.

Siebel 7.5 includes an autosynchronization option to help maintain the frequency of synchronization. Frequent synchronization by mobile users can improve the performance of the system. After initializing their local database, mobile users enable or disable autosynchronization from User Preferences > DB Synchronization. For more information, see [“Using Autosynchronization” on page 87](#).

## Synchronization Parameters

The configuration parameters that Siebel Remote uses for synchronization include:

- **ClientRootDir.** Name of the Siebel client installation directory.

- **DockConnString.** Logical network address of the Siebel Server to which you want to connect for synchronization. It is recommended that every synchronization session occur within the corporate firewall. If your deployment must support synchronization through the Internet from outside the firewall, VPN is a good alternative. If this is the environment, the port for synchronizing with your server must be opened on your firewall. Also make sure your Internet Service Provider (ISP) does not block communication to this particular port. This parameter has the following format:

```
siebel server name:network protocol:sync port #:  
service:encryption:compression
```

where:

- *logical siebel server name* = logical network address of the Siebel Server to which you want to connect for synchronization.
- *network protocol* = the name of the networking protocol to use. TCPIP is the only valid value and is the default value.
- *sync port #* = the TCP/IP port number dedicated to the Synchronization Manager. The default value is 40400 if nothing is specified.

---

**NOTE:** You can use the Siebel Server Administration screens to override the default value by specifying a value for the Synchronization Manager (SynchMgr) component's SyncPort parameter and restarting the Siebel Server. You can also specify this port number as a command-line option when starting the Siebel Server. If you change this value, the CFG file must also be updated.

---

- *service* = the TCP/IP service you are requesting. SMI is the only valid value and is the default value.
- *encryption* = the encryption package you are using. The encryption facility must match the type used by the server. Both MSCRYPTO and RSA are supported.

Examples of valid values are:

```
SIEBAPP1:TCPIP:40400:SMI:RSA
```

```
SIEBAPP1:TCPIP:9000
```

```
SIEBAPP1
```

- **DockRepositoryName.** Name of the Siebel repository that you are currently using. This parameter must have the same value as the Siebel Server repository.
- **TableOwner.** Name of the database account on the local database where the Siebel schema is installed. Default is SIEBEL.
- **DockTxnsPerCommit.** Number of transactions that Siebel Remote applies to the local database before performing a commit. You should set this configuration parameter to a value that satisfies the needs at your site. The default is 500.

## Using Autosynchronization

The purpose of autosynchronization is to improve the overall usability of the system by increasing the frequency of synchronization sessions. Frequent synchronization decreases the volume of transactions for each session and therefore shortens the average connect time.

The Autosynchronization Agent runs in the background at scheduled times to perform automatic synchronization when connected to the network.

Follow the procedure below to invoke autosynchronization and the available options. One of the options is a synchronization reminder that prompts the user to synchronize if a specified period passes without a synchronization session.

### **To enable autosynchronization**

- 1 Verify that the local database is initialized.
- 2 Verify that the Siebel Autosync program was added to the Windows Startup Group during the installation process.

If not, add it by copying it from the Siebel Program group. This allows the Auto Synchronization agent to start when the computer boots up.

- 3 Log in to the local database, and navigate to User Preferences > DB Synchronization.

- 4 Under Auto-Synchronization, define your options using the information below.

Field	Description
Enable Auto-Synchronization check box	Required to enable autosynchronization.
User Confirmation check box	Optional.
Maximum Retries drop-down list	Defaults to zero, but 2 or 3 is recommended.
Maximum Network Latency drop-down list	Sets a network latency that will prevent the autosynchronization agent from invoking a synchronization session. Required. The administrator establishes this policy. For example, at 56K the threshold may be 200 to 300 milliseconds or higher.

- 5 Under Synchronization Frequency, select a frequency from the Synchronization Frequency drop-down list, then use the other fields to further define the frequency.

- 6 Synchronization Frequency drop-down list values:

Option	Description
Default	Default is Empty. Same behavior as if autosynchronization is disabled.
System boot up	Perform next synchronization after the computer is started and operational. If no network connection is available, try again the next time the computer is rebooted.
Mobile Client Start up	Perform synchronization after the Mobile Web Client is started. If no network connection is available, try again the next time the client is started.
Hourly	Perform the synchronization every hour at the specified time increment chosen in the <i>Hourly at</i> picklist. If the computer is not operational at the specified time, then perform the synchronization at the earliest time when the machine is operational.

Option	Description
Daily	Perform synchronization every day at the specified time entered in the <i>Daily at</i> field. If the computer is not operational at the specified hour, then perform the synchronization at the earliest time when the machine is operational.
Weekly	Perform synchronization every week on the specified day chosen in the <i>Weekly On</i> picklist, and at the specified time entered in the <i>Weekly At</i> field. If the computer is not operational at the specified time, then perform the synchronization at the earliest time when the machine is operational.

- 7** In the Synchronization Reminder form, select the Enable Synchronization Reminder check box and select a minimum number of days from the Min Days Between Sync Sessions drop-down list to display the Synchronization Reminder dialog box when the Mobile Web Client is up and if the last synchronization was earlier than the “Minimum days between sync sessions.”

This will remind the user to perform synchronization. The reminder dialog will appear with the following text: “Perform database synchronization now?” The user can respond accordingly.

## Filtering Regional Workflows

Siebel 7.5 workflow administration allows filtering out of workflow processes that only apply at the regional level. Therefore, only records associated with workflows needed on the Mobile Web Client will be routed to those nodes. This decreases the volume of data to help optimize local databases. For more information about this topic, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

## Enabling Encryption for Synchronization Networking

To use encryption, both the server and the client must enforce encryption in their connection parameters. If these parameters do not match, connection errors will occur.

- For the server, set the encryption server parameter to MSCRYPTO or RSA. You can use the Server Manager command line or the Server Administration screen.

- For the client, encryption is the fifth parameter in the DockConnectionString. Override the default NONE with MSCRYPTO or RSA. You may use either AASRV:TCPIP:40400:SMI:MSCRYPTO or RSA, or APPSRV:::MSCRYPTO or RSA.

Siebel eBusiness Applications use MSCRYPTO or RSA to encrypt data traffic between the server and the Mobile Web Client. It is configured at the component level for replication with these clients and the server. It is *not* used to encrypt the local database nor the data in it. Also, it is not used for communication with the database.

## Using a Different Data Source

You can use a different data source from the one specified in the [Local] section of the CFG file. Use the following procedure to do this.

### To use a different data source

- 1 In the [DataSources] section of the CFG file, add a statement for the new data source name.

For example,

```
NewDSN = NewDSN
```

- 2 Under the [Local] section, create a new section for the new data source.

You can copy the [Local] section and rename the section. For example,

```
[NewDSN]
```

- 3 Update the new section as appropriate and adjust the ConnectString parameter as necessary to read:

```
ConnectionString=ClientRootDir\NewDSN\sse_data.dbf -q -m -x NONE -  
gp 4096 -c40m -ch60m
```

- 4 In the ODBC Data Source Administrator, add a new data source definition called NewDSN using the “Siebel Database ClientRootDir” driver.

Specify Start line and Database file parameters in the Database tab as appropriate. For example,

- Start line: `ClientRootDir\bin\dbeng8.exe -q -m -x NONE -gp 4096 -c40m -ch60m`
  - Database file: `ClientRootDir\NewDSN\sse_data.dbf`
- 5 In the [Siebel] section of the CFG file, update the `LocalDbODBCDataSource` setting to point to the new location. For example,
- ```
LocalDbODBCDataSource = NewDSN
```

## Registering a Mobile Web Client

This section describes how to register a Mobile Web Client. It assumes the Siebel Administrator has previously set up this user as a user in the Siebel application.

If you need to add a large number of Mobile Web Clients to the application, you can consider using EIM to perform a batch load. If your deployment includes Replication Manager, keep in mind that this EIM functionality is only supported on the HQ node. For more information on how to load data into interface tables and then populate base tables, see *Siebel Enterprise Integration Manager Administration Guide*.

Make sure that mobile users have access to the following views in their responsibilities:

- **Mobile User Summary View.** Shows current state of the Siebel Remote Client. Useful for obtaining information about when the client was extracted, when it was initialized, and the last synchronization session. This view is displayed by navigating to User Preferences > Mobile User Summary.
- **Dock Session Log.** Shows information about synchronization sessions, including information about conflicts and other results of those sessions. This view is displayed by navigating to User Preferences > Remote Status.
- **Auto Synchronization View.** Allows each mobile user to perform the following tasks. This view is displayed by navigating to User Preferences > DB Synchronization.
  - Enable, disable, or configure autosynchronization and synchronization reminders

- Set up synchronization authentication credentials
- Set parameters that govern synchronization session behavior

For additional information about setting up employees and adding access to views, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

#### **To register a new Mobile Web Client on a node**

- 1** Navigate to Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration > Mobile Clients.
- 2** From the Parent Server list, select the appropriate node.

If your deployment does not use Replication Manager, then the appropriate node is HQ.

- 3** In the Mobile Clients list, click New.
- 4** In the new Mobile Clients record, enter the Mobile Web Client name in the Mobile Client field.

---

**CAUTION:** The Mobile Web Client name must be entered in uppercase letters and be eight characters or less. It is recommended that you use the Mobile Web Client User ID (see next step) as the Mobile Web Client name. It *can* contain only Roman, alphanumeric, and the \_ or - characters. It *cannot* include spaces, periods, or other invalid characters ( / \ : \* ? “ < > | ) as in the DOS file naming schema. Siebel Remote uses the Mobile Web Client name to create inbox and outbox directories on the Siebel Server.

---

- 5** In the User ID field, click the select button, and choose the User ID of the mobile user.

User ID is used to access the user’s local database during initialization and synchronization.

- 6** In the Routing Model field, click the select button, and choose the data routing model to which the mobile user belongs.

For information on data routing models, see [“Using Routing Models” on page 96](#).

- 7** In the Language(s) field, click the select button, and choose the preferred language or languages for the mobile user. If the preferred languages are not available, click New and follow the instructions in the dialog boxes to add these choices.

A language preference allows the mobile user to download data in a preferred language, or languages, for the following dock objects that contain Translation Tables: LOV, Product, Literature, Catalog, Catalog Category. This helps optimize the size of the local databases.

Dock objects are logical groups of tables with special schema structures to synchronize data between a server database and a mobile database in a coherent manner.

By default, the Language(s) field is empty, which means the mobile user will receive data in *all* the languages for these dock objects.

Data for each of the other dock objects is routed to Mobile Web Clients based on the normal visibility rules.

- 8** Complete the remaining fields as appropriate.

The Sync Password field is used by the Synchronization Manager if the authentication method in the Siebel Server Component Parameters is set to Siebel. Set the password in this field and give it to the mobile user.

The App Server Name field is not populated until the Database Extract is run for the mobile user. At the time the Mobile Web Client record is created (S\_NODE) the APP\_SERVER\_NAME field is NULL.

---

**NOTE:** If you use EIM to load mobile user records, records without an HQ node as the parent node do not appear in the Mobile Clients view. The parent node is stored in the following two columns: EIM\_NODE.par\_name and EIM\_NODE.par\_node\_type\_cd. Although these columns are not required for EIM, they are required for Siebel Remote. When you enter mobile users using the Mobile Clients view, these columns are populated by default.

---

- 9 If the data routing model assigned to this mobile user is Sales Representative, Analyst, Minimal Data, or Sales Manager, navigate to Applications Administration > Responsibilities > Responsibilities list, and select the corresponding Responsibility with the Routing Model suffix.

The corresponding Responsibility with the Routing Model suffix relates to the data routing model assigned in [Step 6](#) above. For more information about corresponding routing models and how these help optimize the size of local databases, see [“Limiting Views Available to Mobile Web Clients” on page 114](#).

- a In the Users list, add a new record.
- b In the Add Users Selection dialog box, select the mobile user and click OK.

## Routing Rules and Dock Objects

This section provides an overview of routing rules and dock objects.

Routing rules provide the logic for Database Extract and Transaction Router server components to perform their tasks. These rules reflect the data visibility and data access policies within the application.

- [“Routing Rules”](#)
- [“Dock Objects” on page 95](#)

For additional information about this topic, see *Siebel Tools Reference*.

### Routing Rules

Routing rules are SQL statements that Transaction Router and or Database Extract use to evaluate what records should be routed to each mobile user. There are about 1,500 active routing rules in Siebel 7.5. They are designed to accomplish the following:

- Protect data integrity
- Allow the same visibility of data when users are connected to the server
- Facilitate access control

- Maintain application logic and functionality

The types of routing rules are the means to implement these requirements.

You can see these routing rules in *Siebel Tools Reference*. However, you will not be able to update or modify these rules. Any such changes will require Siebel Expert Services working in conjunction with Siebel engineering. However, for extension tables generated using Database Extensibility, routing rules can be generated using a wizard provided within Siebel Tools.

## Dock Objects

A Dock Object is a logical grouping of tables with a special schema structure to synchronize data between a server database and a mobile database in a coherent manner. Routing rules belong to dock objects.

Generally, there are three types of dock objects in the Siebel architecture:

- Enterprise dock objects
- Private dock objects
- Limited dock objects

Enterprise dock objects are those objects that are visible to all users within the application. Examples include currency and catalog.

Private dock objects are those objects that will not be routed to mobile users. If data is created on Mobile Web Clients, it will be sent up to the server. However, updates to them will not be returned to the client. Data visibility of private dock objects to users is not used in the routing consideration.

---

**CAUTION:** After making any change to the database schema, run the Generate New Database Template component and reextract all mobile clients, or use Siebel Anywhere kits to distribute the change to all mobile clients. It is strongly recommended that you do this even if the schema change only affects private dock objects, because individual tables in a private dock object may become visible to mobile clients at a later time, and problems can occur if server and local database structures do not match.

---

Limited dock objects are those objects whose data may or may not be visible to a particular user—most user data is of this type. These objects have routing rules, as described earlier, that determine which records are routed to a particular mobile user.

Routing rules are SQL statements that determine whether a given piece of data should be routed to a given user. Routing rules embody the data visibility and data access built into Siebel eBusiness applications. Any transactions in the system are associated with a set of routing rules that may cause the transactions to be routed to a mobile user.

A routing model is a collection of routing rules. The next section includes a detailed description of the routing models available. A mobile user can now be defined as associated with any of the routing models. Thus, transaction routing will behave differently for each mobile user, depending on the routing model the user is associated with.

## Using Routing Models

This section describes the Routing Models available to reduce the amount of data replicated to mobile users. For a majority of mobile users, the MOBILE CLIENT - STANDARD, MOBILE CLIENT - EXTRACT ONLY, or Executive Management routing model is adequate. However, for users who need to minimize their local database size, using one of the specialized routing models may be appropriate.

---

**NOTE:** Before you deploy Siebel Remote with any of these specialized routing models, it is strongly recommended that you discuss this with a Siebel technical resource.

---

Routing models determine what data will be extracted to, and what follow-on transactions will be routed to, mobile users. By careful application of specific docking rules, local database sizes are reduced, and, as a result, so are synchronization times and transaction application times. The docking visibility rules determine which records from the server database are propagated to each mobile user.

The flexibility available through data routing models helps align more closely the extraction of data and routing of transactions with the specific needs of the mobile users. This helps minimize the size of the local databases and the connect time to download a database extract and to synchronize.

To match the data routed to mobile users assigned to some of the routing models, administrators can limit the views for these users. This functionality applies to mobile users assigned to the following out-of-the box routing models: Sales Rep Standard, Sales Mgr Standards, Field Technician, Analyst, Sr. Field Engineer, and Field Engineer.

For more information about limiting views available to mobile users and how to do this, see [“Limiting Views Available to Mobile Web Clients” on page 114](#).

---

**CAUTION:** Make sure Routing Models are consistent with the responsibilities and positions of the mobile users. The responsibilities and position of an employee determine the access that person has to the Server database. Balancing the data routing model with a user’s access helps to optimize the size of that user’s local database. This also helps to minimize synchronization time.

---

Each mobile user will be associated with one Routing Model. A Routing Model includes a set of routing rules. Union of the routing rules determines whether a record will be routed to a Mobile Web Client.

The descriptions that follow include the Routing Models available out-of-the-box.

Routing models also impact what data will be extracted to, and what follow-on transactions will be routed to, regional servers. See [“Routing Groups and Routing Rules” on page 186](#). for more details regarding routing groups for regional servers.

## **Field Sales Representative Standard**

Users assigned the Sales Representative Standard routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a salesperson.

The views associated with this model include the following:

- Accounts

- Activities / Calendar
- Activity Plans
- Assessments
- Contacts
- Competitors
- Correspondence
- Currencies
- Decision Issues
- Employees
- Expense Reports
- Opportunities
- Periods
- Presentations
- Proposals
- Sales Methods
- Sales Stages

### **Field Sales Manager Standard**

Users assigned the Sales Manager Standard routing model will receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a sales manager. The views associated with this model include those listed above for the Sales Representative Standard in addition to the manager's Team's Accounts, Contacts, and Opportunities.

## **Field Technician**

Users assigned the Field Technician routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a field technician. It provides the Field Technician with the most basic or essential data to complete the required work in the most timely manner. The views associated with this model include the following:

- Account
- Action
- Activities
- Asset Mgmt - Asset
- Contact
- Employee
- Employee Skill
- Employee Skill Item
- Entitlement Account
- FS Activity Parts Movement
- FS Activity Recommend Parts & Tools
- FS Activity Step
- FS Asset Measurement Characteristics
- FS Asset Measurement Readings
- FS Bucket - Part Browser
- FS Bucket Header - Part Browser
- FS Expense Item
- FS Instruction
- FS Inventory Location

- FS Inventory Transaction
- FS InvLocProduct
- FS Substitute Part Bucket - Part Browser
- FS Transaction Assets
- Internal Product
- List of Values
- Mapsearch
- Order Entry-Orders
- PS Project Team
- Salutation (eApps)
- Service Agreement
- Service Request
- Session Action
- Session Detail
- Session Log
- SI Account External
- SI Broadcast Message
- SI Employee External
- SRF Screen
- SRF Screen View
- Time Sheet Daily Hours
- User Preferences

## **Senior Field Engineer**

Users assigned the Senior Field Engineer routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a senior field engineer. It includes data to support interaction with others and the service center, access to product and parts data, access to solution knowledge bases, basic sales functionality, and customer and asset data. The views associated with this model include those in the following list:

- Account
- Account External Product
- Account Note
- Account Private Note
- Business Address
- Action
- Activities
- Asset Mgmt - Asset
- Calendar Access
- Contact
- Contact Note
- Contact Private Note
- Cycle Counting
- Cycle Counting Execution
- Employee
- Employee Skill
- Employee Skill Item
- Entitlement Account
- Expense

- Expense Item
- Expense Approver list
- Expense Unassoc Item
- FS Activity Parts Movement
- FS Activity Recommended Parts & Tools
- FS Activity Step
- FS Asset Measurement Characteristics
- FS Asset Reading
- FS Asset Warranty
- FS Bucket Header - Part Browser
- FS Bucket - Part Browser
- FS Cycle Counting Serial Parts
- FS Expense Item
- FS Instruction
- FS Inventory Location
- FS Inventory Transaction
- FS InvLoc Product
- FS Inventory Options
- FS Invoice
- FS Invoice Line Items
- FS Invoice Line Item Details
- FS Invoice Note
- FS Invoice Payments
- FS Repair

- FS Substitute Part Bucket - Part Browser
- FS Substitute Products
- FS Transaction Assets
- Internal Product
- List Of Values
- Mapsearch
- Opportunity
- Order Entry - Orders
- Order Entry - Line Items
- Order Entry - Line Item Actions
- Order Entry - Line Item Available Products
- Personal Payment Profile
- Price List
- PS Rate List
- PS Position Type
- Pricing Model
- Pricer Factors
- PS Project Team
- Response
- Salutation (eApps)
- Service Agreement
- Service Agreement Metric
- Service Request
- Service Request Attachment

- Session Action
- Session Detail
- Session Log
- SI Account External
- SI Broadcast Message
- SI Employee External
- Shift Hour
- Solution SR/PD
- SRF Screen
- SRF Screen View
- Time Sheet
- Time Sheet Daily Line
- Time Sheet Unassoc Daily Hours
- Time Sheet Approver
- Time Sheet Daily Hours
- User Preferences
- Work Type
- Contact (All)
- Action Attachment
- Messaging
- Decision Issue
- Related Service Request
- Account Attachment
- Quote

- Project
- Position
- FS Order Entry - Line Item Warranty
- Order Item XA
- Activity Plan
- Activity Plan Action
- Order Entry Attachment
- Asset Mgmt - Asset Relationship
- Asset Mgmt - Asset Transaction
- Asset Shared Note
- Asset Private Note
- Asset Mgmt - Asset (sub-components)
- Product Defect
- Asset Mgmt - Asset Attachment
- FS PM Action (w/ PM Plan Item Info)
- FS PM Applicable Plan Item
- FS Invoice Attachments
- Contact Attachment
- Contact Relationship
- Messaging Activity
- Messaging Attachment
- Solution
- SR Resolution Item
- Related Solution

- Sales Tool
- Key Feature
- Sales Tool by Product
- Product Comparison
- Component Product
- FS Order Item Action Assets Rcv
- FS Receiving Internal
- FS Pending RMA PO RO
- FS Shipping Action
- FS Receiving Action
- FS Warranty
- Quote Item
- Service Region
- Zip Code

### **Field Engineer**

Users assigned the Field Engineer data routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a Field Engineer. This model provides the Field Engineer with all the data required to perform and debrief a complex job requiring an acceptable level of historical data regarding customer and asset history. With this data the Field Engineer can order parts, generate service invoices, debrief time and expense on site, and perform cycle counts. Debriefing is the reporting of material usage, time, and expenses to service managers after completing an activity.

The views associated with this model include:

- Account
- Account External Product

- Account Note
- Account Private Note
- Business Address
- Action
- Activities
- Asset Mgmt - Asset
- Calendar Access
- Contact
- Contact Note
- Contact Private Note
- Cycle Counting
- Cycle Counting Execution
- Employee
- Employee Skill
- Employee Skill Item
- Entitlement Account
- Expense
- Expense Item
- Expense Approver list
- Expense Unassoc Item
- FS Activity Parts Movement
- FS Activity Recommended Parts & Tools
- FS Activity Step
- FS Asset Measurement Characteristics

- FS Asset Reading
- FS Asset Warranty
- FS Bucket Header - Part Browser
- FS Bucket - Part Browser
- FS Cycle Counting Serial Parts
- FS Expense Item
- FS Instruction
- FS Inventory Location
- FS Inventory Transaction
- FS InvLoc Product
- FS Inventory Options
- FS Invoice
- FS Invoice Line Items
- FS Invoice Line Item Details
- FS Invoice Note
- FS Invoice Payments
- FS Repair
- FS Substitute Part Bucket - Part Browser
- FS Substitute Products
- FS Transaction Assets
- Internal Product
- List Of Values
- Mapsearch
- Order Entry - Orders

- Order Entry - Line Items
- Order Entry - Line Item Actions
- Personal Payment Profile
- Price List
- PS Rate List
- PS Position Type
- Pricing Model
- Pricer Factors
- PS Project Team
- Response
- Salutation (eApps)
- Service Agreement
- Service Agreement Metric
- Service Request
- Session Action
- Session Detail
- Session Log
- SI Account External
- SI Broadcast Message
- SI Employee External
- Shift Hour
- Solution SR/PD
- SRF Screen
- SRF Screen View

- Time Sheet
- Time Sheet Daily Line
- Time Sheet Unassoc Daily Hours
- Time Sheet Approver
- Time Sheet Daily Hours
- User Preferences
- Work Type

## Consultant

Users assigned the Consultant routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a consultant. The option is a limited use license of the professional services functionality. Using this routing model, the data will be limited to time sheets, expense reports, limited project information, calendar and employee skills.

The views associated with this model include the following:

- Action
- Action (Busy Free Time)
- Calendar Access
- Change Position
- Employee
- Employee Skill
- Employee Skill Item
- Expense
- Expense Approver
- Expense Hotel Item
- Expense Item

- Expense Mileage Item
- Expense Unassoc Item
- Incentive Compensation Home Page Payout
- Marketing Analysis Predefined Category (Sales)
- Opportunity
- Project
- Project Status
- Project Status Item
- PS Project Risk
- Quote
- Salutation (eApps)
- SI Account External
- SI Broadcast Message
- Time Sheet
- Time Sheet Approver
- Time Sheet Daily Hours
- Time Sheet Daily Line
- Time Sheet Unassoc Daily Hours

## **Analyst**

Users assigned the Analyst routing model work at research firms. The information that is routed to users assigned to the Analyst model includes Contacts, Accounts, Assets, Service Requests, and Quotes. The analysts also receive Activities, but only those activities that are related to Quotes, Opportunities, or Service Requests. An analyst also is routed Project Items such as the Team Workbook, Time and Expense, and Time sheets. The views associated with this model include the following:

- Contacts
- Contact entitlements
- Agreements for Accounts
- Agreements for Contacts
- Orders for an account
- Assets
- Quotes for an account
- Activities for orders
- Activities for quotes
- Activities for assets
- Activities for opportunities
- Payments
- Service Requests
- Customer Surveys
- My Opportunities
- Price Lists
- Expense Reports
- Expenses

If on the Project Team:

- ProjectItems
- TeamWorkbook
- Time & Expenses
- TimeSheets
- Expenses

## **Minimal Data**

Users assigned the Minimal Data routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing only with Calendar Items, My Contacts, My Accounts, and My Opportunities.

The views associated with this model include the following:

- My Contacts More Info View
- My Contacts Addresses View
- My Daily Calendar
- My Monthly Calendar
- My Weekly Calendar
- My Accounts More Info View
- My Opportunities More Info View
- All Employees View

## **Mobile Partner User**

Mobile Partner User is a routing model that is used by Partner Sales and Service Representatives that have implemented a mobile version of the Siebel PRM Partner Portal. Users assigned the Mobile Partner User routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing only with Accounts, Activities, Assets, Contacts, Correspondence, Inventory Locations, Opportunities, Orders, Price Lists, Products, Proposals, Quotes, Revenues, Service Requests, and Sources.

## **Mobile Client – Standard**

Unlike the routing models above, this model allows a full set of data related to the user being routed based on visibility rule configuration in the Siebel Repository. There are some exceptions to this. The Subordinate Activities are not routed to Supervisors. Also, a few other visibility rules do not apply.

## Mobile Client – Extract Only

The difference between this and the Mobile Client – Standard model is that this model will not allow synchronization. Hence, a local database with this model reflects the snapshot of application data with respect to a user.

## Executive Management

This is an extract-only routing model designed for executive managers so they can use the Mobile Web Client to perform their everyday tasks. The model excludes all manager rules so that only data visible to them will be routed to their Mobile Web Clients.

## Limiting Views Available to Mobile Web Clients

Every mobile user is assigned a routing model to help optimize the size of that user's mobile database. To match the data routed to mobile users assigned to some of these routing models, administrators can limit the views for these users. Administrators can limit views for mobile users with the following out-of-the box routing models: Sales Representative, Analyst, Minimal Data, and Sales Manager.

Determining what views a mobile user sees depends upon the responsibilities assigned to that user and the views attached to these responsibilities. The list of views attached to a specific responsibility are listed and administered in the Responsibilities View within Siebel's Applications Administration screen. For more information about this topic, see [“Using the Responsibilities View” on page 115](#).

Each view attached to a responsibility includes a Local Access flag. Limiting views is accomplished by turning off the Local Access flag for views that a particular mobile user does not need.

Responsibilities with the Routing Model suffix include all the views that are *not* available to the user assigned to the corresponding routing model. This prevents the application from displaying views for a mobile user where there is no data.

Another mobile user, with or without the same responsibilities, may have a different set of views turned off. Therefore, administrators can turn off one set of views for one mobile user and a different set for another mobile user. By limiting the views on a user-by-user basis, administrators can further optimize the size of local databases.

---

**NOTE:** A particular user may have two or more responsibilities that include the same view. If Local Access = False (unchecked) for this view in any of the user's responsibilities, then the view is *not* available on the Mobile Web Client. This view will not appear in any Navigation element, including the Site Map.

---

The corresponding Responsibilities with the Routing Model suffix include: Sales Representative Routing Model, Sales Manager Routing Model, Minimal Data Routing Model, and Analyst Routing Model.

A mobile user will have access to that user's normal views when operating either as a dedicated Web client or a Web client. The limitation on the visibility of views only applies while operating as a Mobile Web Client.

## Using the Responsibilities View

The Responsibilities view within the Applications Administration screen includes a Responsibilities list and two subordinate lists:

- Views list of the associated views added to individual responsibilities.
- Users list of the users assigned to individual responsibilities.

It also displays a Routing Model field that is read-only.

In this view you can do the following:

- Adjust the Local Access flag—turn it off or turn it on.
- Add views to a responsibility.

- Read the Routing Model assigned to a user.

---

**NOTE:** Assign users to routing models in the Remote Administration > Mobile Clients view.

---

- Add users to a responsibility.

The procedure below describes how to limit the visibility of views for mobile users assigned to the routing models listed at the beginning of this section.

#### **To limit the visibility of views for Mobile Web Clients**

- 1** Determine the views a mobile user does not need.
- 2** Navigate to Applications Administration > Responsibilities > Responsibilities list, and select the responsibility with a view this mobile user does not need.
- 3** In the Views list, select the view this mobile user does not need.
- 4** Clear the Local Access check box to remove the check mark.
- 5** Repeat Steps 3 and 4 for all the views the mobile user does not need that are associated with this responsibility.

## Using the Views View

The Views view within the Applications Administration screen includes a Views list and a subordinate Responsibilities list. This allows an administrator to determine which responsibilities are associated with a particular view. An administrator can also determine whether those responsibilities allow a view to be displayed on the Mobile Web Client.

The Views list includes the entire list of views in the application. The Local Access flag is a default setting for administering these views, for example adding views to responsibilities in the Responsibilities view discussed above.

The Responsibilities list includes the associated responsibilities added to the individual views in the Views list. The Local Access flag determines whether a view is available for mobile users with that responsibility.

## Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges

If you want to authenticate Mobile Web Clients when they synchronize, you need to create accounts for each client depending on the authentication method you choose. This section describes the requirements for the three authentication methods available for synchronization.

- If you use AppServer authentication, you must create a user account on the server for each Mobile Web Client. Examples include:
  - If the Remote server is running in a supported Windows environment, create a Windows user account and password for each Mobile Web Client you defined. You can create these user accounts and passwords either on the Remote server or on the domain.
  - If the Remote server is running in a UNIX environment, create the user on the application server that will host Siebel Remote. For more information on how to create users in this environment, see *Siebel Server Installation Guide for UNIX*.

---

**NOTE:** The user name and password must both be in uppercase letters and be eight characters or less. They may contain only single-byte, alphanumeric, and the \_ or - characters. They may *not* include spaces, periods, or other characters that are invalid in a DOS file naming scheme, such as ( / \ : \* ? “ < > | ) .

---

- If you use the Mobile Web Client’s change password functionality while connected to the server, the server password changes and is stored in a database-specific table, not a Siebel table. Therefore it is not synchronized to the local database. The mobile user would still use that user’s old password to access the user’s local database until the node is reextracted.

- If you use database authentication, you must create a database logon and password for each Mobile Web Client. After the local database password is set up at the time of initialization, users cannot change it.

---

**CAUTION:** If the user changes the password on the server (in the connected mode), that user will have two different passwords: one for the server and one for the local database. This will cause database password authentication to fail.

---

- If you use the Siebel authentication method, you must set the password for each Mobile Web Client on the Mobile Clients view, and you must provide the password to mobile users so they can use it to synchronize with the Siebel Server.

If you do not use authentication, then you do not need to create any of these accounts or passwords.

#### **To create an NT user and password for a Mobile Web Client**

- See [“To enable the Windows NT user rights on the Siebel Remote server”](#) on [page 77](#) and follow the instructions.

This chapter describes database extraction. Extracting databases for Mobile Web Clients involves tasks for both the Siebel Remote server and the Mobile Web Clients. [Table 14](#) shows these tasks. You must repeat each of these steps, for every Mobile Web Client.

**Table 14. Tasks for Enabling Mobile Web Clients**

| Task                                                                      | Where Performed   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <a href="#">Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client on page 119</a>   | Server            |
| <a href="#">Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database on page 129</a>     | Mobile Web Client |
| <a href="#">Enabling the Stand-Alone Synchronizer on page 131</a>         | Mobile Web Client |
| <a href="#">Viewing Session Details on Mobile Web Clients on page 134</a> | Mobile Web Client |

## Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client

The database extract process retrieves data visible to a specific mobile user from the server database. It retrieves data according to routing rules that define the level of access to information for each Mobile Web Client. It creates compressed files that contain data to be loaded into a local database when a Mobile Web Client initializes the database.

The database extraction process uses the new database template created by running the Generate New Database Template component. This template lets the database extraction process provide up-to-date database schemas to either new or existing mobile clients. It is strongly recommended that you distribute all database schema changes to all mobile clients, even if the changes are of types that are not visible to the mobile clients, such as changes to private dock objects. This is important because individual tables that are currently in a private dock object may become visible to mobile clients at a later time, and problems can occur if server and local database structures do not match.

The Siebel 7.5 Database Extraction component includes an enhancement when dealing with a list of mobile users to extract. It will identify visible instances for all members of a list of nodes. Then it identifies the commonly visible instances and extracts the records only once for all these nodes. Then it extracts instances outside the common set for each node. This will help reduce the time for extracting large numbers of mobile users. The parameter that enables this is Optimal Mode.

---

**NOTE:** Multiple instances of the database extract components can be run simultaneously. In order to reduce contention, each task should be assigned to use a different temporary table called S\_DOCK\_INITM\_n, where n is 1 to 48. Siebel Remote supports up to 100 such tasks. The Siebel Schema includes 48 S\_DOCK\_INITM tables. You can create additional tables based on your loads and needs by using the ddlexp and ddlimp utilities.

---

Before running a database extract for a client, you must make sure that your organization's reporting hierarchies are updated. Use the Position Administration view from the Application Administration screen to verify that the user you are about to extract has a valid position in your organization's hierarchy. The resulting information is used by the system's routing rules, and may affect the outcome of the database extract. For more information on positions, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

---

**CAUTION:** If a mobile user's position or routing model changes, reextract the Mobile Web Client's database to delete records that should no longer be visible to the user based on the user's new position.

Additionally, this improves performance because the reorganization process will generate many transactions on the server, which will create a backlog.

---

Administrators can start several instances of dbxtract and reduce the contention by using more than one table. The parameter is TS Table Number with a default of 1.

During the cleanup of dobjinst.dbf database tables, administrators can choose truncation or deletion of the tables. The parameter is Truncate TS Table with a default of FALSE.

---

**CAUTION:** If two instances of dbxtract use the same table, do *not* set TruncateTSTable to TRUE—one instance can truncate the records entered from another instance.

---

The Save Client Transactions feature prevents the loss of local transactions a mobile user may have entered into the local database that were not included in the server db extract. This feature is valid for normal re-extract of a mobile user's local database and will not work during a major upgrade process.

The default setting for the server parameter Save Client Transactions is TRUE. If the db extract for a Mobile Web Client occurs when this parameter is set to TRUE, Siebel Remote will invoke an action before applying the new db extract. Remote will extract transactions from the current local database that are not yet synchronized with the server and store them in the mobile user's inbox as DX files.

After the current local database is replaced with the new extract, Remote applies the DX files from the mobile user's inbox to the new local database. These include the saved transactions that were not synchronized with the server. These transactions are then sent to the server during the next synchronization session.

#### **To run a database extract for a Mobile Web Client**

- 1** From the application-level menu, choose View > Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Operations.
- 2** Click the Component Requests tab.
- 3** In the Component Request form, click New.
- 4** In the Component/Job field, select Database Extract from the picklist.
- 5** In the Component Request Parameters list, click New and add the necessary parameters.

The required parameter for Database Extract is Client Name.

The value for the Client Name parameter is the name of the Mobile Web Client.

- 6** In the Component Requests form, click the menu button and then click Submit request.

The Mobile Web Client database is extracted. This may take a few minutes.

---

**NOTE:** For limited-visibility objects, attaching many children to the same parent record can degrade the router performance and the database extract performance. The reason this may happen is that for each child the visibility for all other children must be checked. Whenever there are more than 10,000 child records attached to a parent (such as contacts attached to an account), the database extract performance and router performance need to be tested thoroughly. In case performance degradation is observed, it is necessary to limit the number of children per parent.

---

## Database Extraction for Multiple Users

There are times when you need to extract a list of users or hundreds of users. The procedures in this section show how to do this.

**To extract a list of users**

- 1 Create a list (or two) containing the mobile users in a text file.
- 2 Put one user name on each line.
- 3 Start dbxtract server task.

Use @filename (including the path) as the value for the Client Name parameter.

- 4 If you have more than one list, start another dbxtract instance.

Be sure to specify a different value for the TS Table Number parameter.

**To extract hundreds of users**

- 1 Separate users into multiple lists (about 50 to 100 per list).
- 2 Start a dbxtract task for each list.
- 3 Note that mobile users should be extracted on the Applications server against which the users will be synchronized.

## **Example of Extracting Databases for Multiple Users**

This section describes the steps in the overall process of creating database extracts for multiple Mobile Web Clients. The purpose is to provide a broad perspective on the tasks involved.

It begins after installation of the Siebel application, to include registration of every user. The administrator receives the following business requirement: create database extracts for new mobile users AMARTIN, CCHENG, PSINGH and RMARLOW.

The requirement implies that to create a database extract you also need a database template. A database template is created only once. Additionally, in order to create database extracts for multiple users at the same time, you need to create a text file containing the user IDs of these mobile users. Finally, you submit the component request for creating the database extract.

The steps below outline the process for the example business requirement:

- 1 Log in to your Siebel eBusiness Application as System Administrator.

- 2** Create the database template by navigating to Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Operations > Component Requests tab.
- 3** Create a new component request for Generate New Database.
- 4** Submit the component request.

The task of creating a database template takes a while. To check the progress of this task, go to the Components View and check the information about the status of this task.

Upon successful creation of a database template, you will see the Components View.

- 5** In order to extract databases for multiple users, create a text file called ExtractUserList.txt containing the user IDs of the new mobile users.
- 6** Navigate to Enterprise Operations > Component Requests tab and define a component request for Database Extract.
- 7** Enter the Component Request Parameters and submit the component request.

Once the task of creating database extract is completed, go to the directory d:\sea14010\siebsrvr\docking to see folders for AMARTIN, CCHENG, PSINGH and RMARLOW.

### Performing a Database Extract to a CD Directory

By default, a database extract stores the compressed file on the Siebel Remote server. Users log on to the Siebel Remote server to download data to initialize their local databases. However, a database extract can also store the compressed file in a directory that you specify in the database extract parameters. This allows you to copy the compressed database file from the specified directory and then make an image of the files on a CD-ROM or other media device, which you can then distribute to users. Mobile users can initialize their local databases directly from the CD-ROM rather than having to download to the Siebel Remote server.

---

**NOTE:** The user still needs a network connection for this method. Remote clients still need to synchronize before retrieving a database extract from the CD-ROM.

---

When Mobile Web Clients initialize from a CD-ROM, a parameter in the Mobile Web Client's configuration file instructs the database initialization process to check the CD-ROM directory rather than the Siebel Remote server for files to download. This parameter is `FileSystem` and is located in the Local section of the client configuration file. See [“Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences” on page 58](#) for more information.

---

**NOTE:** It is possible to extract groups of users simultaneously. Therefore, it is possible to use one CD for more than one user. The names of the files contain the `client_names`.

---

Before Mobile Web Clients can initialize from a CD-ROM or other media device, you need to add the `FileSystem` parameter to client CFG files. The `FileSystem` parameter directs the Mobile Web Client to the CD-ROM or other media device directory during the initialization process. For information on setting the `FileSystem` configuration parameter, see [“Setting Synchronization Preferences” on page 85](#).

### **To perform a database extract to a CD directory**

- 1** Complete [Step 1](#) through [Step 4](#) of [“To run a database extract for a Mobile Web Client” on page 122](#).
- 2** In the Component Request Parameters list, click New and add the necessary parameters.
  - a** The required parameter for Database Extract is Client Name.  
The value for the Client Name parameter is the name of the Mobile Web Client.
  - b** The parameter for extracting to a CD is CD Directory. Specify the name of the directory to which you want to extract files  
For example, type `D:\temp-extract\username`.
  - c** Modify the values of other parameters as necessary.  
[Table 15 on page 126](#) lists the parameters and default values for the database extract component.

- 3 In the Component Requests form, click the menu button and then click Submit request.

The Mobile Web Client database is extracted to the directory specified in the CD directory parameter. You can make an image of these files on a CD-ROM or other media device.

## Parameters of the Database Extract Component

Table 15 lists the parameters and default values for the database extract component.

**Table 15. Database Extract Parameters**

| Name                          | Alias        | Required/Optional | Default Value and Usage Notes                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CD directory                  | CDDir        | Optional          | Name of a directory to which snapshot files are copied for use by the CD-ROM initialization method.                                                                              |
| Client Name                   | Client       | Required          | Name of the Mobile Web Client for which you are performing a database extract. This corresponds to the Mobile Client Name field in the Mobile Clients view. <sup>1</sup>         |
| Database Init Method          | InitMethod   | Optional          | Method for creating the Siebel Remote database. Default is SQL Anywhere.                                                                                                         |
| Database template file name   | DbTplFile    | Optional          | Name of the SQL Anywhere Database Template file. Default is sse_utf8.dbf.                                                                                                        |
| Extract all Repository Tables | ExtractRepos | Optional          | Specifies that the repository tables will be included in a db extract. Values are TRUE and FALSE.                                                                                |
| Last Extract Date             | ExtractSince | Optional          | When specified, Database Extract extracts Mobile Web Clients only if they have not been extracted since this date-time value. The value must use the format YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS. |

**Table 15. Database Extract Parameters**

| Name                           | Alias         | Required/Optional | Default Value and Usage Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Last Sync Date                 | SyncSince     | Optional          | When specified, Database Extract extracts Mobile Web Clients only if they have not been synchronized since this data-time value. The value must use the format YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.                                                        |
| Maximum data file size         | DatFileSize   | Optional          | Sets the maximum size of a data file in megabytes. Minimum size is 1. Maximum size is 1000. Default is 500.                                                                                                                                |
| Message Language Code          | Language      | Optional          | Extract messages for this language. Default is ENU.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Move Siebel Remote client      | Move          | Optional          | Specifies if Database Extract should set the Mobile Web Client's Siebel Server name to the local Siebel Remote server if the Mobile Web Client is currently registered on another Siebel Remote server. The default is FALSE. <sup>2</sup> |
| Nodes Per Group:               | NodesPerGroup | Optional          | Number of users in one group to be extracted together when OptMode is TRUE. Default is 35.                                                                                                                                                 |
| Optimal Mode                   | OptMode       | Optional          | Specifies whether to use the optimal mode to extract a group of users. Default is FALSE.                                                                                                                                                   |
| Save Client Transactions       | SaveTxns      | Optional          | Save pending client transactions during database initialization. Default is TRUE. This feature will not work during the upgrade process.<br><br>Save Client Transactions is valid <i>only</i> for Mobile Web Clients.                      |
| Specify the mobile client vers | ClientVersion | Optional          | Specifies the client software version. This is important during upgrades. Default is 2000 for v7.x.                                                                                                                                        |

**Table 15. Database Extract Parameters**

| Name              | Alias           | Required/Optional | Default Value and Usage Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Truncate TS Table | TruncateTSTable |                   | Specifies whether the S_DOCK_INITM_n table should be truncated instead of deleted after the database extract task completes. Used in the cleanup phase. Default is FALSE.<br><br>When running the database extract (dbxtract) component with the Truncate TS Table parameter set to TRUE, the user ID used for running the server component must have administrative privileges in the database server. |
| TS Block Size     | TSBlockSize     | Optional          | Block size for dobjinst.dbf database in bytes. The default is 0. The block size is automatically calculated depending on the total number of rows visible to the Mobile Web Client.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| TS Cache Size     | TSCacheSize     | Optional          | Cache size for dobjinst.dbf database in kilobytes. The default is 2048 kilobytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| TS Table Number   | TSTableNum      |                   | Number of dobjinst.dbf database tables available for dbxtract: 1 to 48. Default is 1. The ending number of the S_DOCK_INITM_n table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

1. You can specify a list of node names delimited by commas. If the first character is @, this parameter specifies the name of a file that contains a list of nodes. Client names in the file must be separated by one of the following delimiters: new line, comma, space, tab, period, or semicolon. You can specify wildcards, using \* to match zero or more characters and ? to match a single character.
2. This option applies to the Siebel Remote clients, including Mobile Web Clients and regional nodes. Database Extract returns an error if you try to extract a Mobile Web Client that was previously extracted on a different server. You can move the client to the current Siebel Server by setting the Move parameter to TRUE. You can also move a regional node to the current Siebel Server by using the Move parameter. The Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, and DB Extract processes on the old server stop servicing the Mobile Web Client or regional node in the next iteration.

You may get an error message if the target node is used by another Siebel Remote server process. For example, if another Siebel Remote server process were accessing the inbox or outbox directory for sjones, you would receive the following error message:

```
Target node "sjones" is currently in use by another server
process. Try again later.
```

In this case, you should try to rerun a database extract in a few minutes when the file may be available and unlocked.

---

**NOTE:** After you have performed a database extract for a Mobile Web Client, the client database must be initialized before any data exchange between the client and the server can occur. This includes the uploading of any client database changes.

---

## Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database

The volume of information that must be downloaded from the Siebel Remote server to initialize a Mobile Web Client's database is usually substantial. You should establish a LAN (rather than a modem or WAN) connection between the server and the Mobile Web Client for this process.

Alternatively, the local database can be initialized from a CD-ROM or other media if compressed files have been copied into the folder specified as FileSystem parameter. For more information, see ["Performing a Database Extract to a CD Directory" on page 124](#).

---

**NOTE:** To initialize a Mobile Web Client database, the TableOwner parameter in the CFG file must be set to Siebel (the default).

---

### ***To initialize the Mobile Web Client database using the GUI***

- 1 Establish a connection between the Siebel Remote server and the Mobile Web Client.

- 
- 2 In the Mobile Web Client's Siebel program group, click the Siebel Remote icon.

---

**NOTE:** Verify that the icon is pointing to the appropriate CFG file. The default is siebel.cfg.

---

- 
- 
- 3 In the Siebel Remote Parameters dialog box, enter the appropriate information.  
In the Client Name field, enter the registered Siebel client name.  
In the User Name field, enter the login name of the mobile user.
- 4 Enter the password.  
The password must match the authenticator password.
- 5 Click Continue.
- 6 Monitor the process for errors by clicking the opposing arrows in the lower right corner of the screen.

#### **To initialize the Mobile Web Client database from the command line**

- The Mobile Web Client database can also be initialized from the command line using the stand-alone synchronizer (siebsync.exe). For information on how to use the stand-alone synchronizer, see [“Enabling the Stand-Alone Synchronizer” on page 131](#).

#### **To initialize the Mobile Web Client database during login**

- Another way to initialize the Mobile Web Client is to log in to the local database when starting the application. When your Siebel application cannot find a local database, it will attempt to initialize the local database following the procedures described above.

## Enabling the Stand-Alone Synchronizer

A mobile user can control the synchronization start-up process by running the Siebel Remote client in a third-party scheduling program. [Table 16](#) shows the command-line options for the Siebel Remote client.

**NOTE:** If a local connection to the client is open and the user uses the Siebel Remote icon to synchronize, synchronization works successfully. However, if a new database extract exists for that user, the synchronization fails, because it is trying to overwrite the `sse_data.dbf` file, which is already in use. Therefore, the stand-alone Siebel Remote client should only be used when the Mobile Web Client is not in use.

**Table 16. Stand-Alone Synchronizer Command-Line Options**

| Option     | Definition                                     | Required/Optional | Default Value and Usage Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /?         | Help                                           | Optional          | Provides online help for usage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| /a         | Autostart mode                                 | Optional          | Available modes are Y or N.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| /ApplyTxns | Apply transactions during this synchronization | Optional          | Determines whether or not transactions will be applied to the local database during the current synchronization operation. Available modes are Y or N. Defaults to Y. A value of N directs transactions to be downloaded and uploaded, but not applied. |
| /c         | Configuration file                             | Required          | The default is <code>siebel.cfg</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| /comm      | Communication parameters                       | Optional          | Used for modem connections.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| /d         | Data source                                    | Optional          | The default is local.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| /help      | Help                                           | Optional          | Provides online help for usage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| /i         | Iterations                                     | Optional          | Sets the number of iterations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Table 16. Stand-Alone Synchronizer Command-Line Options**

| <b>Option</b>     | <b>Definition</b>                                  | <b>Required/Optional</b> | <b>Default Value and Usage Notes</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /l                | Language                                           | Optional                 | Language to use for the docking session.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| /n                | Client name                                        | Required                 | Name of Mobile Web Client. The value must be entered using uppercase letters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| /p                | User password                                      | Required                 | Database connection password. The value must be entered using uppercase letters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| /p2               | Confirmation password                              | Required                 | Required when initializing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| /ParallelApply    | Apply transactions in parallel with data transfers | Optional                 | Determines whether transactions will be applied to local database while other transactions are still being transferred between client and server, or whether all transactions will be applied after data transfer is complete. Available modes are Y or N. Defaults to Y. This option is ignored if the ApplyTxns option is set to N. |
| /RecvAutoUpdFiles | Receive auto updates to files                      | Optional                 | Determines whether Mobile Web Client will download updates to requested files. Available modes are Y or N.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| /RecvFiles        | Receive files                                      | Optional                 | Determines whether Mobile Web Client will download files from server. Available modes are Y or N.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| /RecvPubFiles     | Receive published files                            | Optional                 | Determines whether Mobile Web Client will download published files. Available modes are Y or N.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| /RecvTxns         | Receive transactions                               | Optional                 | Determines whether Mobile Web Client will download transactions from server. Available modes are Y or N.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

**Table 16. Stand-Alone Synchronizer Command-Line Options**

| Option    | Definition        | Required/Optional | Default Value and Usage Notes                                                                      |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /SendTxns | Send transactions | Optional          | Determines whether Mobile Web Client will send transactions to server. Available modes are Y or N. |
| /sleep    | Sleep time        | Optional          | Number of seconds to sleep between iterations.                                                     |
| /u        | User name         | Required          | Database connection user name. The value must be entered using uppercase letters.                  |
| /v        | Verbose mode      | Optional          | Available modes are Y or N. <sup>1</sup>                                                           |

1. You may want to run the Stand-Alone Synchronizer unattended by setting the verbose mode to N. After synchronization, the Stand-Alone Synchronizer returns 0 if the process succeeded, or a nonzero Siebel error code if it failed.

Using certain command line options, the process of uploading and downloading transactions can now be separated from the process of applying downloaded transactions to the local database. The purpose of this option is to let users choose the most convenient timing for these two portions of a synchronization, rather than requiring them to be performed together. The following procedures briefly describe how to transfer and apply transactions separately.

**To download and upload transactions without applying them – command line**

- To download and upload transactions without applying them to the Mobile Web Client’s local database, use the following command-line syntax:

```
siebsync.exe /n ClientName /u UserName /p Password /p2 Password /ApplyTxns N
```

**To apply previously downloaded transactions – command line**

- To apply transactions that were downloaded to the Mobile Web Client during an earlier synchronization option, use the following command-line syntax:

```
siebsync.exe /n ClientName /u UserName /p Password /p2 Password /SendTxns N / RecvTxns N /RecvFiles N
```

# Viewing Session Details on Mobile Web Clients

The Remote Status view displays information about database updates based upon the value of the system preference MRG:User Friendly Notification. For more details about system preferences that affect the way Remote manages database changes, see [“Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences” on page 58](#). There are three applets in this view: Session Summary, Session Actions and Session Actions Details. The first two applets typically appear, while display of the Session Actions Details applet depends upon the activities of the synchronization session.

The previous synchronization details are archived on the local database and not stored on the server database. On [Local], the previous synchronization details could be found in the Site Map > User Preferences > Remote Status view. On [Server], only the latest synchronization details are stored. These can be referenced from views in the Siebel Remote Administration screen.

The lists below describe the fields in the three applets in the Remote Status View.

- Session Summary. Lists every synchronization session that occurred since the last local database initialization. There are three fields:
  - Session Date. Timestamp of the beginning of the synchronization session.
  - Session Status. Result of the synchronization session.
  - Session Result Summary. Key summary information of the synchronization session.
- Session Actions. Provides detailed information of the major action of the synchronization session. Usually, there are five major actions. There are two fields in this applet.
  - Item Name. Name of major action.
  - Results Summary. Summary result of the particular action.
- Session Actions Details. Provides more detail depending upon the activities of the synchronization session.
  - Item Type. Type of object, such as Account or Opportunity.
  - Item Name. The actual field.

- Action. The kind of conflict or action.
- Updated By. Self-explanatory.
- Date Updated. Self-explanatory.
- Item Details. Detailed information as to what was done.



This chapter describes administrative tasks for operations and maintenance of Mobile Web Clients. It also addresses routing rules, dock objects, and dealing with failures and recovery. [Table 17](#) addresses these tasks.

**Table 17. Tasks for Administering Siebel Remote**

| Task                                                                              | Where Performed       | When Performed                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components on page 138</a> | Siebel Server Manager | Database start-up, Siebel Server start-up |
| <a href="#">Monitoring Siebel Remote Operations on page 141</a>                   | Siebel Server Manager | Daily                                     |
| <a href="#">Data Synchronization on page 154</a>                                  | Client Machine        | Daily or more often                       |
| <a href="#">Sending Messages to Mobile Users on page 156</a>                      | Siebel Remote server  | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Refreshing a Client Database on page 156</a>                          | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Deactivating and Reactivating a Mobile Web Client on page 157</a>     | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Deleting a Mobile Web Client on page 158</a>                          | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Changing Routing Models on page 160</a>                               | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Adding New Mobile Users on page 161</a>                               | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">How to Set Client-Side Logging on page 161</a>                        | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Event Tracing for Locking on page 164</a>                             | Siebel Server Manager | As needed                                 |
| <a href="#">Handling Failure and Recovery on page 166</a>                         | Various               | As needed                                 |

# Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components

Use the Siebel Server Manager to start and stop any Siebel Remote server components.

---

**NOTE:** Event logs provide helpful information for diagnosing problems that may arise. To enable event logging for Remote components, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*. For example, to receive useful information for the dbxtract component, enter the following in the command-line interface for srvmgr:

```
change evtloglvl GenericLog=5, Trace=5, SQL=5,  
EVENT_GENERIC_PROFILE=5 for comp Dbxtract
```

```
start task for comp Dbxtract with Client=<ClientName>, SQLFlags=2,  
TraceFlags=7
```

---

### To enable the Remote component group

- 1 In the command-line interface, change to the Siebel Server bin subdirectory.
- 2 Enter the following command to invoke the Line Mode Server Manager:

```
srvmgr /e <enterprise server> /g <gatewayserver> /u <username>  
/p <password>
```

- 3 From the Server Manager command line, enter:

```
enable compgrp remote
```

This will enable all Siebel Remote components: Synchronization Manager, Transaction Processor, Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, Replication Agent, Database Extract, Parallel Database Extract, and Generate New Database.

- 4 From the GUI, synchronize the components by navigating to View > Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Configuration > Batch Component Admin.
- 5 Click Synchronize.

### To disable the Remote component group

- From the Server Manager command line, enter:

```
disable compgrp remote
```

**To enable Remote component group for a specific server**

- From the Server Manager command line, enter:

```
enable compgrp remote for server <server_name>
```

This will enable Remote only on certain Application servers in the enterprise, rather than on all of them.

**To disable individual components of the Remote component group**

- From the Server Manager command line, enter:

```
disable compdef <component definition>
```

Component definition will be `synchmgr`, `txnproc`, `txnroute`, `txnmerge`, `repagent`, `dbxtract`, `pdbxtract`, or `gennewdb`, depending upon the situation.

For additional information on starting and stopping server components using the Server Manager, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

## Transaction Processor

- You can run only one transaction processor on each Siebel Remote server.
- At startup, the transaction processor verifies that another transaction processor is not running on the same Siebel Remote server.

---

**NOTE:** The optimal number of Remote Servers, and therefore the number of Transaction Processors, will depend upon the number of mobile users, volume of transactions generated by the system, and other aspects of the system. For assistance with hardware planning and sizing, contact Siebel Expert Services.

---

## Transaction Router

The Transaction Router takes transactions from `DOCKING\TXNPROC` and constructs DX files. It then sends these DX files to the outbox corresponding to the appropriate mobile user.

## Multiple Transaction Router Processes

You can start multiple Transaction Router processes on the Siebel Remote server to increase the throughput of transactions to mobile user outboxes.

- Each Transaction Router process can simultaneously route transactions from the database server to a different Mobile Web Client. For example, if you start four Transaction Router processes, the four Transaction Router processes can route transactions to four different Mobile Web Clients simultaneously.
- Using multiple Transaction Router processes reduces the total time needed to route transactions to Mobile Web Clients.

---

**NOTE:** The optimal number of Transaction Routers will depend upon the number of mobile users, volume of transactions generated by the system, hardware configuration and other components of the system.

---

You can start as many parallel Transaction Router processes as the database server and Siebel Remote server can support:

- You should monitor the database server and Siebel Remote server to make sure the parallel Transaction Router processes do not overload the systems.
- Plan to start with two Transaction Router processes and increase the number as needed.
- You will typically run multiple Transaction Router processes per server.

---

**CAUTION:** Do not run a Transaction Router and Ddlsync at the same time. It can cause Transaction Router to shut down.

Also, do not run the *visutl* utility on a Mobile Web Client when Transaction Router is processing that node.

---

## Routing Transactions from the Database Server

Only one Transaction Router process can route transactions from the database server to a Mobile Web Client at any one time:

- The Transaction Router locks the Mobile Web Client's outbox directory to prevent other Transaction Router processes from routing transactions to the same Mobile Web Client.
- Other Transaction Router processes skip the Mobile Web Client if another Transaction Router process is already processing this client.
- After the Transaction Router finishes routing transactions to the Mobile Web Client, the Transaction Router releases the lock and searches for another unlocked Mobile Web Client to process.

## Transaction Merger

Transaction Merger pulls DX files from the inbox in the server Docking Directory and applies these to the server. It also resolves conflicts.

- You must run at least one transaction merger on each Siebel Remote server.
- You can run multiple transaction mergers on the same Siebel Remote server.

---

**NOTE:** The optimal number of Transaction Mergers will depend upon the number of mobile users, volume of transactions generated by the mobile users, hardware configuration, and other components of the system.

---

## Monitoring Siebel Remote Operations

This section describes how to monitor the status of Mobile Web Clients and Siebel Remote operations on the server. The information is divided into three main sections:

- [“Monitoring Mobile Web Client Status” on page 142](#)
- [“Monitoring Transaction Logs” on page 150](#)
- [“Monitoring Siebel Remote Server Operation Status” on page 153](#)

## Monitoring Mobile Web Client Status

You can use views in the Siebel Remote Administration screen to monitor the status and progress of Mobile Web Clients.

### Using the Client Status View

The Client Status view displays the current status of Mobile Web Clients, including:

- The last time each Mobile Web Client synchronized
- The product versions on each Mobile Web Client
- The last time each Mobile Web Client was extracted and initialized
- Free Disk (Bytes)

Siebel Remote updates the data in this screen at the start and end of each synchronization session. However, the data in this screen is not updated in the following two cases:

- During an initialization

The Free Disk (Bytes) field will also be reset to zero during dbextract.

- After applying changes to the client database, *if* those changes are applied after data transfers are complete

In both cases, the actions occur after the Mobile Web Client disconnects from the server. Therefore, the data in the status screen is not updated until the next synchronization session. At that time, users can check this information to help avoid running out of disk space on their laptops.

When using Siebel Anywhere, the following occurs: the Product Versions field is not populated until the Mobile Web Client upgrades to another version. Once the upgrade is complete, the Product Versions field is updated with the version information after the next synchronization session.

#### To use the Client Status view

- 1** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2** From the Show drop-down list, select Client Status.

- 3 In the Mobile Clients/Replication Servers list, select the Mobile Web Client that you want to monitor.

The fields in the Siebel Remote Client Status form provide details about the status.

| <b>Field</b>                 | <b>Description</b>                                              |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Extracted on Server</b>   |                                                                 |
| Last Sessions                | Time when the extract for this client was done                  |
| Seconds                      | Time it takes to extract the client                             |
| File name                    | First file name for the extracted records                       |
| Rows extracted               | Row count of extracted records                                  |
| Snapshot (bytes)             | Total size in bytes for extracted records                       |
| # of files in File System    | Number of files in file system for this client                  |
| File System (bytes)          | Size of files in file system, in bytes                          |
| Max transaction              | Maximum transaction ID when this client was extracted           |
| <b>Initialized on Client</b> |                                                                 |
| Last Session                 | Time when the local database initialization was done            |
| Seconds                      | Time it takes to initialize the local database                  |
| Free disk (bytes)            | Free disk space available on the mobile client's laptop drive   |
| Database (bytes)             | The size in bytes of the local database                         |
| # of files in File System    | Number of files in local file system                            |
| File System (bytes)          | Total size in bytes of files in local file system               |
| Product version              | System information for the machine where local database resides |
| <b>Current status</b>        |                                                                 |
| Last session                 | Time of the last synchronization session                        |
| Seconds                      | Duration of the last synchronization session                    |

| Field                     | Description                                                       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Free disk (bytes)         | Free disk space available on the Mobile Web Client's laptop drive |
| Database (bytes)          | Current size of the local database                                |
| # of files in File System | Number of files in the local file system                          |
| File system (bytes)       | Current size in bytes of files in the local file system           |
| Total session             | How many times this client has synchronized so far                |
| Product version           | Current system information for the client machine                 |

### Using the Client Diagnostics View

The Client Status Diagnostics view provides data routing information about the processors, mobile clients, and regional nodes. [Table 18](#) lists and describes the fields on the Siebel Remote Client Diagnostics form.

**Table 18. Fields on Siebel Remote Client Diagnostics Form**

| Field                   | Description                                                     |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name                    | Node name                                                       |
| Type                    | INIT, ROUTE, RECEIVE, MERGE, CLEAN, SESSION                     |
| Local                   | Flag to show whether it is for current or remote databases      |
| Created                 | Creation time for the record                                    |
| Last updated            | Last update time for the record                                 |
| Last file               | Last file number processed for the node                         |
| Last transaction id     | Last transaction number processed for the node                  |
| Last txn duration (sec) | Time it took to process transaction in the latest session       |
| Total duration (sec)    | Total Time it took to process transaction for the node          |
| Last txn size (bytes)   | Size of transactions processed for the node during last session |

**Table 18. Fields on Siebel Remote Client Diagnostics Form**

| Field                    | Description                                                       |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Total (bytes)            | Total size of transactions processed for the node                 |
| Last txn operations      | Number of operations processed for the node during last session   |
| Total operations         | Total number of operations processed for the node                 |
| Last transactions        | Number of transactions processed for the node during last session |
| Total transactions       | Total number of transactions processed for the node               |
| Total attachment (bytes) | Total size of file attachments processed for the node             |
| Total attachments        | Total number of file attachments                                  |
| Last attachment (bytes)  | Size of file attachments for the node during last session         |
| Last attachments         | Number of file attachments for the node during last session       |
| Additional information   | More detailed information for the node                            |

## Using the Synchronization Sessions View

The Synchronization Sessions view displays information about every mobile user and each user's synchronization session for a given period of time. This can be accessed only by the Systems Administrator.

### To use the Synchronization Sessions view

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2 From the Show drop-down list, select Synchronization Sessions.
- 3 In the Synchronization Period form, select the time frame for the period of time you are investigating.
- 4 In the Mobile Users list, select the Mobile Web Client that you want to examine.

- 5 In the Synchronization Sessions list, run a query using the appropriate values for the fields.

See [Table 19](#) for descriptions of the fields in this list.

Information displayed on the form and two list applets includes:

- Synchronization period with From and To fields. Required.
- Mobile users and the Application server for each.
- Synchronization session details.

**Table 19. Fields in Synchronization Sessions List**

| Field                       | Description                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Synchronization Starts      | Date and time when the synchronization session started.                                                                                |
| Synchronization Ends        | Date and time when the synchronization session ended. This will be empty if the synchronization session did not complete successfully. |
| Transactions                | The number of transactions replicated to the mobile user during the session.                                                           |
| Transaction Size (MB)       | The total size in MB of the transactions replicated to the mobile user during the session.                                             |
| Client Merge Duration (Min) | Time (minutes) taken to merge transactions on client.                                                                                  |

### Using the Upload Statistics View

The Upload Statistics view displays information about transactions and attachment files that are:

- Created on each Mobile Web Client
- Received on the server
- Applied to the server

To check that transactions are made to the server after the client synchronizes, use this screen to verify the last set of transactions sent from the client to the server, and the last transaction applied to the server.

**To use the Upload Statistics view**

- 1** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2** From the Show drop-down list, select Upload Statistics.
- 3** In the Mobile Clients/Replication Servers list, select the Mobile Web Client that you want to monitor.

Table 20 gives descriptions of the fields on the Siebel Remote Upload Statistics form.

**Table 20. Fields on Siebel Remote Upload Statistics Form**

| Field                          | Description                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Last Session                   | Duration of the last synchronization session.                                                                                            |
| Last File                      | Last transaction file created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server.                                          |
| Last Transaction               | Last transaction created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server.                                               |
| Last Session Transaction Count | Number of transactions created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server during the last synchronization session. |
| Total Transactions             | Total transactions created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server since the last database extract.             |
| Last Session Operation Count   | Number of operations created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server during the last synchronization session.   |
| Total Operations               | Total number of operations created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server since the last database extract.     |
| Last Session (Bytes)           | Size of transactions created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server during the last synchronization session.   |

**Table 20. Fields on Siebel Remote Upload Statistics Form**

| <b>Field</b>                       | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Total Transferred (Bytes)          | Size of transactions created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server since the last database extract.             |
| Last Session Duration (Sec)        | Duration of last synchronization session created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server.                         |
| Total Seconds                      | Total duration of all synchronization sessions since the last database extract.                                                            |
| Last Session Attachment File Count | Number of attachment files created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server during the last synchronization.       |
| Total Attachment Files             | Number of attachment files created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server since the last database extract.       |
| Last Session Att File Size (Bytes) | Size of attachment files created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server during the last synchronization session. |
| Total Attachment (Bytes)           | Size of files created on the client, received on the server, and applied on the server since the last database extract.                    |

### **Using the Download Statistics View**

The Download Statistics view displays information about transactions and attachment files that are:

- Created on the server
- Received on the client
- Applied to the client

#### **To use the Download Statistics view**

- 1** Navigate to the Siebel Remote Administration screen.
- 2** From the Show drop-down list, select Download Statistics.

- 3 In the Mobile Clients/Replication Servers list, select the Mobile Web Client that you want to monitor.

Table 21 describes the fields on the Siebel Remote Download Statistics form.

**Table 21. Fields on Siebel Remote Download Statistics Form**

| Field                          | Description                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Last Session                   | Date and time of last session created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client.                                  |
| Last File                      | Last transaction file created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client.                                          |
| Last Transaction               | Last transaction created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client.                                               |
| Last Session Transaction Count | Number of transactions created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client during the last synchronization session. |
| Total Transactions             | Total transactions created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client since the last database extract.             |
| Last Session Operation Count   | Number of operations created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client during the last synchronization session.   |
| Total Operations               | Total number of operations created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client since the last database extract.     |
| Last Session (Bytes)           | Size of transactions created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client during the last synchronization session.   |
| Total Transferred (Bytes)      | Size of transactions created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client since the last database extract.           |
| Last Session Duration (Sec)    | Duration of last synchronization session.                                                                                                |
| Total Seconds                  | Total duration of all synchronization sessions since the last database extract of the node.                                              |

**Table 21. Fields on Siebel Remote Download Statistics Form**

| Field                              | Description                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Last Session Attachment File Count | Number of attachment files created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client during the last synchronization.                |
| Total Attachment Files             | Size of files created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client.                                                             |
| Last Session Att File Size (Bytes) | Size of the file attachments created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client during the last synchronization session.      |
| Total Attachment (Bytes)           | Size of all file attachments created on the server, received on the client, and applied on the client since the last database extract of this node. |

## Monitoring Transaction Logs

Use the Siebel Remote Administration views to monitor transaction logs.

### **To monitor transaction logs**

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.

- 2 From the Show drop-down list, select Transaction Log.

The Transaction Log list displays information about each transaction. The Operation Types for Siebel Remote transactions are as follows:

| Operation Type | Description           |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>D</b>       | Delete single row     |
| <b>E</b>       | Delete multiple rows  |
| <b>F</b>       | Delete cascading rows |
| <b>I</b>       | Insert single row     |
| <b>U</b>       | Update single row     |
| <b>V</b>       | Update multiple rows  |
| <b>X</b>       | Insert set-based rows |
| <b>Y</b>       | Update set-based rows |
| <b>Z</b>       | Delete set-based rows |
| <b>G</b>       | Merge multiple rows   |

The fields in the Transaction Log list are described below.

| Field               | Description                                                                    |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Node number         | ID of the node that generated the transaction                                  |
| Operation           | Insert (I), update (U), delete (D), ...                                        |
| Item                | Table name of the transaction                                                  |
| File flag           | Flag to indicate whether the transaction is on a file attachment-related table |
| Transaction id      | Sequence number of the transaction                                             |
| Transaction row     | ROW_ID of the transaction                                                      |
| Transaction updated | Timestamp showing when the transaction was last updated                        |

The fields in the detail form are described below.

| <b>Field</b>              | <b>Description</b>                                                    |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Transaction updated by    | ROW_ID of the user who last updated the transaction                   |
| Transaction conflict id   | ID of the conflict for the base table record                          |
| Transaction Mod Id        | Version number of the base table record                               |
| Visibility level          | Visibility event level for the transaction: Enterprise(E), Limited(L) |
| Visibility event          | Whether the transaction is a visibility event                         |
| Related visibility event  | Whether the transaction is a related visibility event                 |
| Dock object code          | Dock object code of the transaction instance                          |
| Primary table row id      | ROW_ID of Primary table for the dock object instance                  |
| Length (Long Log data)    | Real length of the long column of the transaction data                |
| Log Data 1, 2, 3, 4, long | These columns hold transaction data                                   |

- 3** To monitor transaction logs by operation, select Transaction Log By Operation from the Show drop-down list.

The fields in the Transaction Log By Operation view provide information about the number of transactions for each operation using the following fields:

| <b>Field</b>           | <b>Description</b>                                 |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Operation              | Type of the operation                              |
| Number of transactions | Total number of transaction for the operation type |

- 4 To monitor transaction logs by node, select Transaction Log By Node from the Show drop-down list.

The Transaction Log By Node view displays the number of transactions for each node. A node is a Mobile Web Client or Regional server. The following fields appear in the view:

| Field                  | Description                                         |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Node Name              | Mobile client node name                             |
| Number of transactions | Total number of transactions for the operation type |

**NOTE:** This view only shows transactions from mobile users and regional nodes. It does not include transactions created by nonmobile users who connect directly to the server.

- 5 To monitor transaction logs by table, select Transaction Log By Table from the Show drop-down list.

The Transaction Log By Table view displays the number of transactions for each table in the Siebel database. The following fields appear in the view:

| Field                  | Description                                         |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Item                   | Table name                                          |
| Number of transactions | Total number of transactions for the operation type |

## Monitoring Siebel Remote Server Operation Status

Use the Server Manager to monitor Siebel Remote server tasks that are running or have completed by viewing their state values and statistics.

State values contain information about the current operation of a server task or the server component for which the task is running. Statistics are recorded at the task level for server tasks. When the task completes its operation, task-level statistics roll up to the component and server levels.

You can use the Server Manager to view the state values and statistics for Siebel Remote server components and tasks. For more information on state values, statistics, and the Server Manager, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

## Data Synchronization

This section discusses the implications of data synchronization for the administrator. These explanations will help you respond to and coordinate synchronization issues for Mobile Web Clients. For details regarding the synchronization process, refer to [“Siebel Remote Flow Diagram” on page 21](#) and [“Synchronizing a Mobile Web Client” on page 40](#).

---

**NOTE:** A client that is extracted gets the latest transactions. The routers no longer need to route transactions that were generated before the extract started. Extracting all Mobile Web Clients again allows the Transaction Processor to delete all transactions that were created before the extraction from the transaction log.

---

## Managing Synchronization Frequency

You are responsible for developing guidelines for synchronization frequency, the frequency at which your mobile users synchronize. You should recommend an appropriate interval between synchronization sessions, taking into consideration your organization and its activities. The frequency and schedule you define for the Transaction Router should also be considered.

Initially, you may recommend that mobile users synchronize once a day. You can then use the following factors to evaluate your synchronization traffic and determine if your synchronization schedule needs refinement.

**Connection time.** Frequent synchronization reduces the volume of transactions to be transmitted during a synchronization session, thereby reducing connection time for that session. You should evaluate the difference in connection time and cost between less frequent but longer synchronization sessions, and more frequent but shorter sessions.

**Disk space requirements.** Frequent synchronization reduces the number of transactions accumulated between sessions, thereby reducing the demand for disk space on both the Siebel Remote server and the client. You should evaluate the availability of disk space and determine the trade-off between increasing disk space and increasing synchronization frequency.

**Database volatility.** Your synchronization schedule determines when changes to the server database are reflected in client databases. In industries with high sales volatility, frequent synchronization can be a significant advantage. You should investigate the value of frequent synchronization to your organization in such a case.

Remember that the Transaction Router detects and routes database changes to client outboxes for subsequent transmission during synchronization. Therefore, the operating status of the Transaction Router on each application server will affect data availability for mobile users. In a highly volatile environment, you may want to run multiple Transaction Routers for each application server. Additionally, close monitoring of this component is highly recommended.

**Mobile users' productivity.** Frequent synchronization affects your mobile users' time, and potentially affects their productivity. You should consider your users' environments and their convenience in completing a synchronization session.

**Server modem connections.** The ratio of Mobile Web Clients to server modem connections influences your synchronization schedule. If your ratio is high, you may need to assign specific synchronization times to your users.

## Auto Synchronization

Auto-Synchronization functionality performs database synchronization automatically. Once enabled and configured by the mobile user, the Auto-Synchronization Agent runs in the background at scheduled times. It will perform automatic synchronization when connected to the network. This can improve the overall usability of the system by increasing the frequency of synchronization sessions.

This is invoked on the Mobile Web Client. One of the options is a synchronization reminder that prompts the user to synchronize if a specified period passes without a synchronization session. For more information about autosynchronization, see [“Using Autosynchronization” on page 87](#).

# Sending Messages to Mobile Users

The message-of-the-day feature enables you to send messages to mobile users. When a mobile user synchronizes with the server, the synchronizing client displays the message of the day to the mobile user each time docking occurs.

### **To enable the message of the day**

- Place the `modt.txt` file in the `admin` subdirectory within each Siebel Remote server root directory.

For example, if Siebel is installed on `D:\sea700`, then place the `modt.txt` file in:

```
D:\sea700\siebsrvr\admin
```

Mobile users will see the message when they synchronize again.

# Refreshing a Client Database

Occasionally, you may need to refresh the local database for a Mobile Web Client. For example, whenever there is a change to the system preference parameters, a refresh or reextract is necessary for the new settings to take effect. See [“Setting Siebel Remote System Preferences” on page 58](#) for more details.

### **To refresh a client database**

- 1** If the Mobile Web Client has transactions ready for uploading, the user should synchronize and send changes to the server.
- 2** Make sure that the Transaction Merger successfully applied transactions to the server database.

There are three ways to determine when transactions from a particular client have been processed:

- Use the Siebel Server Manager to check whether the Transaction Merger successfully applied transactions for the Mobile Web Client.
- Inspect the client’s inbox directory on the Siebel Remote server. There should not be any files with the `.dx` extension in the inbox directory.

- Use the Siebel Client Status screen to check whether Transaction Merger successfully applied transactions for the Mobile Web Client.
- 3 Run Database Extract for the Mobile Web Client.  
Make sure that the parameter Save Transactions is TRUE.  
For information on running a database extract, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).
  - 4 When you have completed a database extract, notify the user to reinitialize the Mobile Web Client’s local database.  
For information on initializing a Mobile Web Client database, see [“Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database” on page 129](#).

---

**NOTE:** After you have performed a database extract for a Mobile Web Client, the client database must be initialized before any data exchange between the client and the server can occur. This includes the uploading of any client database changes.

---

## Deactivating and Reactivating a Mobile Web Client

To deactivate and reactivate Mobile Web Clients, use the following procedure:

### **To deactivate or reactivate a Mobile Web Client**

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2 From the Show drop-down list, select Mobile Clients.
- 3 In the Parent Server form, use the record navigation buttons to select the appropriate server.
- 4 In the Mobile Clients list, select the Mobile Web Client.
- 5 To deactivate the Mobile Web Client, do the following:

- a** In the End Date field, enter a new effective end date that is the current or future date.

This will cause the Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, and Synchronization Manager to stop processing requests for the client.

- b** Click Save.

- c** Delete the docking folder for the Mobile Web Client from the Siebel Remote directory on the Siebel Remote server.

This will prevent the mobile user from establishing a synchronization session with the server.

- d** Stop the Transaction Processor and any Router tasks to clear out any cached user information.

- 6** To reactivate a Mobile Web Client, do the following:

- a** Clear the End Date field so that it does not contain a date.

---

**NOTE:** Even if the date is in the future when you are clearing End Date, it is still necessary to reextract and reinitialize.

---

- b** Click Save.

- c** Reextract and reinitialize the Mobile Web Client.

## Deleting a Mobile Web Client

When you delete a Mobile Web Client, exercise care to keep the user status in sync across the Enterprise Server components. Before deleting a mobile user, be sure to set the end date to the current date or an earlier date. Ideally, shut down the Siebel Remote Enterprise Server components before actually deleting the user record. If the Enterprise Server components must be kept running, wait at least several hours to make sure they have been updated with the new status before actually deleting the user records.

**To delete a Mobile Web Client**

- 1** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2** From the Show drop-down list, select Mobile Clients.
- 3** In the Parent Server form, use the record navigation buttons to select the appropriate server.
- 4** In the Mobile Clients list, select the mobile client you want to delete.
- 5** In the End Date field, set a new effective end date that is the current date or an earlier date.

This will cause the Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, and Synchronization Manager to stop processing requests for the Mobile Web Client.

- 6** Click Save.
- 7** Select the mobile client record for which you set an end date, click the menu button, and click Delete Record.

Repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 7](#) for each Mobile Web Client you wish to delete.

- 8** Delete the docking folder for the Mobile Web Client from the Siebel Remote directory on the Siebel Remote server.

This will prevent the mobile user from establishing a synchronization session with the server.

The docking folder is located in the Docking subdirectory within the Siebel Server root directory. See [“Creating Siebel Server Directories for Mobile Web Clients” on page 33](#) for more details about these folders.

# Changing Routing Models

There are times when an administrator may need to change the Routing Model for a particular mobile user.

---

**NOTE:** Routing models are not related to responsibilities. If a routing model is changed, make sure the user has corresponding responsibilities so that the user does not have access to views for which data is not routed by the new Routing Model.

---

### **To change the routing model for a mobile user**

- 1** Before changing a mobile user's routing model, instruct that user to synchronize with the server and not to invoke any local database changes until after the next synchronization.
- 2** Change the user's routing model.
  - a** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
  - b** From the Show drop-down list, select Mobile Clients.
  - c** Select the mobile client record and make your changes.
  - d** Save your changes.
- 3** Perform a database extract.

See [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).
- 4** Prompt the mobile user to synchronize.

The mobile user can download the new extract at the beginning of the synchronization session.

This process will reinitialize the Mobile Web Client database. See [“Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database” on page 129](#).
- 5** After downloading the new extract, the mobile user can resume normal operation.

## Adding New Mobile Users

To add new mobile users, do the following:

- 1 Register or create the Mobile Web Client. For details, see [“Registering a Mobile Web Client” on page 91](#).
- 2 Perform a database extract for the new Mobile Web Client. For details, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).
- 3 Perform client initialization. For details, see [“Database Extraction for a Mobile Web Client” on page 119](#).

## How to Set Client-Side Logging

This section describes how Mobile Web Clients can set the parameters to control client-side logging. Each heading that follows addresses a different aspect of the process.

### Event Levels

Users set the type of information to be collected by temporarily changing the environment variable `SIEBEL_LOG_EVENTS`.

#### **To temporarily change the environment variable `SIEBEL_LOG_EVENTS`**

- 1 Open a DOS Window and change the current directory to the `<ClientRootDir>\bin` directory.
- 2 Enter the following command:

```
set SIEBEL_LOG_EVENTS=<event level>
```

---

**NOTE:** <event level> can be between 0 and 5. Higher levels collect more detailed information and use more disk space. With the default value of 1, minimal information is collected in the trace file. Set event level to 3 or higher to troubleshoot a problem, or if assistance is required from Siebel Technical Support.

When setting to the higher levels, check that sufficient disk space to is available.

---

- 3** Launch the Siebel client application with the appropriate parameter from the same DOS Window.

For example, to launch the Siebel application with user = USERNAME, password = PASSWORD, and CFG (name and path of the CFG file), and then to log in to local database, enter:

```
siebel /u USERNAME /p PASSWORD /c CFG/ d local
```

This environment variable can also be changed permanently. To do this, follow the procedures below.

#### **To permanently change environment variable SIEBEL\_LOG\_EVENTS in Win2000**

- 1** In the Windows Start menu, choose Settings > Control Panel > System > Advanced Environment Variables.
- 2** Click New and enter the following fields:  
Variable Name = SIEBEL\_LOG\_EVENTS  
Variable Value = <event level >
- 3** Click OK.

The newly added environment variable will be seen in your User Variables list.

The new setting becomes effective the next time you launch the Siebel Client application.

**To permanently change environment variable SIEBEL\_LOG\_EVENTS in Win NT**

- 1 In the Windows Start menu, choose Settings > Control Panel > System > Environment Tab.
- 2 Click the Variable box and set to SIEBEL\_LOG\_EVENTS.
- 3 Click the Value box and set to <event level>.
- 4 Click Set; then the newly added environment variable will be seen in User Variables list.

The new setting becomes effective the next time you launch the Siebel Client application.

**To permanently change environment variable SIEBEL\_LOG\_EVENTS in Win 95 or 98**

- 1 Using Notepad, or another text editor, open the autoexec.bat file in the C:\ directory.
- 2 Add the following line and save the file.  

```
set SIEBEL_LOG_EVENTS=<event level>
```
- 3 Reboot and launch the Siebel Client application.

## Log File Naming

There are two types of log file naming conventions:

- By default, the program log file names are <program>.log. (Siebel.log or UpgWiz.log.)
- The Process/Task Id log file name is Syncthrd\_nnn\_yyy.log.

Where nnn specifies the process-id and yyy specifies the task-id.

## Archiving

The Archive\_number is a positive integer that determines how many log files will be archived. By default, only 10 archived log files are retained and the oldest log file is deleted.

#### To change the archive\_number

- 1 Open a DOS Window and change the current directory to the <ClientRootDir> \bin directory.
- 2 Enter the following command:

```
set SIEBEL_LOG_ARCHIVES=<archive_number>
```

---

**NOTE:** For log files that belong to 1, each execution of the program creates a new log, <program>.log, while archiving the previous versions as <program>\_1.log, <program>\_2.log, and so on, pushing down the numbers in an increasing order chronologically.

Log files that belong to 2 will not be deleted regardless of the value of the SIEBEL\_LOG\_ARCHIVES variable.

---

## Log File Location

The location of the log file of a client program is determined by the following set of variables.

If SIEBEL\_LOG\_DIR is set as SIEBEL\_LOG\_DIR = <dir>, the log file will be created in that directory. Make sure this directory exists and there is access permission to write a file in that location.

If no SIEBEL\_LOG\_DIR is specified, the log file will be created in the <ClientRootDir> \log directory.

## Event Tracing for Locking

Siebel 7.5 includes enhanced tracing capability for Remote and Replication Manager components. This will improve system diagnostics. Trace files track SQL statements the components issue and include some information about the task or function in progress at the time.

The addition of the locks to the tracing mechanism will display the reason locks were acquired, or released, for the designated components. A lock is a handle used by server components to determine which component has access to a specific object such as a DX file in the Transaction Processor directory. The inclusion of locks in the trace files provides additional information for troubleshooting problems. This will help administrators who are working with Siebel support staff to lessen the contention between critical server components for Remote and Replication Manager.

For example, assume there is a problem with the Transaction Processor (TXNPROC). It may be locking certain objects such as DX files in the docking directory and not releasing these. If you set the Log Level to 4 or 5, information about the locks will be captured in the log file for TNXPROC.

This functionality is for the Remote and Replication Manager server components on the HQ or regional nodes, and is not available to the mobile user. These components include:

- Database Extract
- Parallel Database Extract
- Replication Agent
- Synchronization Manager
- Transaction Merger
- Transaction Processor
- Transaction Router

Tracing and logging of locks for the components includes the following objects on the application server:

- Dobjinst.dbf
- DX files
- Inbox
- Outbox

- Visdata.dbf

Use the standard Siebel event tracing mechanisms to enable the tracing for these locks. Logging is controlled by the trace level (level 4 or higher) of the component. The procedures that follow describe how to do this. This does not require restarting of the application server.

#### **To set tracing for locks using the GUI**

- 1** Navigate to Server Administration > Components, and select the component you need to trace.

Choices include the components listed above.

- 2** Click the Component Event Configuration tab, and select the Event Type you want to trace.

Use the Event Description field to help determine which Event Type to choose.

- 3** In the Component Event Configuration list, set Log Level = 4.

The log file for the component selected above will contain the tracing information.

Repeat this procedure for additional traces of locks you want to trace.

#### **To set tracing for locks using the command line**

- From the Srvrmgr command line, enter:

```
srvrmgr: change evtloglvl <event type> = 4 for componentname
```

## Handling Failure and Recovery

Siebel Remote is designed to minimize the impact of a software, communications, or hardware failure. This section describes the most likely failures and how to recover from them.

## Siebel Remote Transmission Failure

Mobile Web Clients may experience occasional transmission failures. These failures may be caused by noise on the telephone line. The Siebel Remote Synchronization Client and Synchronization Manager inspect and verify the integrity of every Siebel Remote transmission. If an error is detected, Siebel Remote automatically retransmits the files until the synchronization is successful.

## Siebel Remote Server Failure

All Siebel server programs are designed to recover automatically from a failure on a Siebel Remote server. After returning the system to an operational state, use the Server Manager to restart the Siebel Server components. For information on using the Server Manager, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

## Siebel Remote Server Media Failure

Media failures on Siebel Remote servers can cause serious disruptions of data synchronization with mobile users. After the Transaction Router routes transactions to files on the Siebel Remote server, the Transaction Processor deletes those transactions from the server database master Txn table.

You should run your Siebel Remote server with a redundant disk configuration. This minimizes the risk of data loss if a device fails that contains inbox/outbox directories for Mobile Web Clients. If a media failure does occur that results in file corruption or loss on a Siebel Remote server, you need to perform the following procedure.

### ***To recover from a media failure on the Siebel Remote server***

- 1** Fix the directories on the disk.
- 2** Instruct the user to send changes to the Siebel Remote server.
- 3** Make sure Transaction Merger applied the transactions to the server database.
- 4** Run Database Extract and reinitialize the Mobile Web Client's local database.

### File Server Media Failure

The Siebel file server stores attachment files such as literature files and submitted correspondence files. Literature files are more or less static and can be recovered from the most recent backup. Any attachment files created after your last backup may be lost. You should configure the file server with a redundant disk configuration to minimize the risk of data loss.

### Database Server Failure

If your RDBMS fails, the database administrator must diagnose and rectify the problem. When the system returns to an operational state, use the Siebel Server Manager to restart the Siebel Remote components. Siebel Remote components automatically recovers their process state from the last committed transaction. A reextraction of the Mobile Web Clients may be necessary.

If the database is recovered up to the point of failure, no action is required because there is no loss of data. However, if the database is recovered up to a point of time prior to the point of failure, then you must reextract and reinitialize all Mobile Web Clients. In this case, follow the steps below after restoring the database backup:

- 1** Disable the Synchronization Manager component.
- 2** Stop the Transaction Router, Transaction Merger and Transaction Processor tasks if they are running.
- 3** Reextract all Mobile Web Clients.
- 4** Start the Transaction Processor task with the `TS_DB_Recreate` parameter set to `TRUE`.
- 5** Start the Transaction Router and Transaction Merger tasks.
- 6** Enable the Synchronization Manager component.

After you complete the steps above, the next action depends on when the last backup was completed, when the failure occurred, and when the user synchronized.

- If the user synchronized at a time between the time the backup was completed and the time the failure occurred, you must:

- a Rename the locale database `<SiebelClientRoot>\local\sse_data.dbf` and `dicdata.dat`.
- b Reinitialize the Mobile Web Client.

Any changes in the Mobile Web Client database that were not sent to the server will be lost.

- If the user synchronized before the backup was completed, Mobile Web Clients can download a new database.

If the database extract was executed with the `Save Client Transaction` parameter set to `TRUE`, none of the Mobile Web Client changes will be lost.

## Server Database Records Truncated or Changed

If records are truncated or deleted on the Server database and these transactions are sent to the Mobile Web Clients, this cannot be changed or reversed. Even if the database is restored, this will cause data mismatch and corruption. After restoring the database to the time it failed, you must reextract all the mobile users.

## Database Server Media Failure

A head crash or other media failure on the Siebel database server may render the database unusable. Therefore, your database administrator should take preventive measures to protect against such occurrences, such as disk mirroring or online backups and RAID (redundant array of independent disks).

If restoring the database results in a permanent loss of transactions from the server, the Transaction Router may have routed some of those lost transactions to Mobile Web Clients prior to the crash. Full recovery may then require a second step: resynchronizing the server and client databases.

### ***To diagnose and restore database synchronization***

- 1 Stop the Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, and Transaction Processor on the Siebel Remote server, and use Siebel Server Manager to disable the Synchronization Manager.

- 2 After the database administrator has returned the database server to an operational state, use the Siebel Server to determine if Transaction Router sent data to any clients after the last backup of the database server.

These are the clients whose databases require reinitialization. To do this:

- a Look at the route log file `txnroute_ < taskid > .log` to see if there is anything about not processing a client because of a corrupted file.
- b If the log indicates that `dobjinst.dbf` (visibility database) is bad, you must reextract the database for the mobile user identified in the log.

For `dbxtract`, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).

---

**NOTE:** A database extract may not be enough to restore a database. For example: On Monday a backup is invoked for two mobile users (A and B). On Tuesday user A synchronizes, yet that database is lost on Wednesday. User A’s database is restored from Monday’s backup.

Then a `dbxtract` is invoked for Users A and B. User B synchronizes without any errors. However, user A receives a mismatch error because the routed values are different between the client and the server. User A must delete the local DB before acquiring a new database.

---

- 3 Notify these users that their databases must be reinitialized.
- 4 Run Database Extract for the affected clients.

For information on running Database Extract, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).

- 5 Notify the affected users that their client databases will be reinitialized the next time they synchronize.

For information on initializing a Mobile Web Client database, see [“Initializing a Mobile Web Client Database” on page 129](#). Since this is a potentially lengthy process, users may want to finish this process at different times. For example, users located close to a field office may want to take advantage of a LAN connection to reduce download time. Others may want to reinitialize during the evening or night, when telephone rates are lower.

## Siebel Client Database Failure

It is not necessary to perform laptop backups, because the information contained on the local database is a subset of the information stored on the server database. Therefore, in the case of a laptop or local database failure, the procedure is to reextract and reinitialize the local database for this Mobile Web Client. Any change made on the local database since the last docking will be lost. It is strongly recommended that the synchronization with the server be executed regularly.

If the client machine loses power during a merger process, then the Local database may be corrupted. To avoid this, make sure the client machine has sufficient power before synchronization.

If a client database becomes unusable because of a media failure or other event, you must refresh the client database. This requires that you run Database Extract for the client. Siebel Systems does not support restoration of local databases because it may result in inconsistency between the local and server databases. For information on running Database Extract, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).

---

**NOTE:** Depending on the kind of failure, database changes and file attachments that were awaiting upload during the next synchronization session may also be lost. In this case, the user must reenter them.

---

## Recovery from Client Initialization Failure

There may be times when initialization of the Mobile Web Client fails and you cannot continue the process. The procedure that follows describes how to recover from this.

**To recover from client initialization failure that cannot continue**

- 1 On the client machine, go to the \$Siebel-Root\bin directory.
- 2 Find the file upgwiz.ucf and delete it.
- 3 Go to the \$Siebel-Root\upgrade directory and delete all files.
- 4 Go to \$Siebel-Root\local directory and delete all the content.

- 5 Rerun the initialization process.

## Restoring the File System After Recovery from a Previous Image

If the docking directory and file system were recovered from a previous image, then the docking directories may contain data that has already been sent to the Mobile Web Client or to the server. In this case, follow the steps below after restoring the file system:

- 1 Stop the Transaction Router, Transaction Merger, and Transaction Processor tasks if they are running.
- 2 Remove all the subdirectories under the <Siebel Server>\Docking directory, except the <Siebel Server>\Docking\Txnproc subdirectory.
- 3 Reextract all Mobile Web Clients.
- 4 Start the Transaction Processor task with the parameter `TS_DB_Recreate` set to `TRUE`.
- 5 Start the Transaction Router and Transaction Merger tasks.
- 6 Reinitialize all Mobile Web Clients.

This chapter describes standardized status reports, how Mobile Web Clients can set the parameters to control client-side logging, and enhanced tracing capability for Remote and Replication Manager components.

Siebel provides a number of online reports that show critical information about Siebel Remote and Replication Manager components and system status. These allow the administrator to obtain additional information about the Remote components and mobile users. This information will enhance the Siebel administrator's ability to monitor and manage a Siebel Remote and Replication Manager deployment.

This information will also enhance the support, and it can reduce administrative overhead.

## Status Reports

There are ten standardized reports available, with the following types of information:

- Synchronization frequency
- Transaction backlog
- Transaction Processor
- Mobile Users Usage
- Outbox Analysis

There are nine on-line reports available from the related views within the Siebel Remote Administration screen. To access these from the application-level menu, choose View > Reports.

The Outbox Analysis report is not an on-line report because it is generated by a workflow. Access for this report is covered later in this chapter.

[Table 22](#) lists the nine on-line reports accessed from the appropriate view within the Remote Administration screen.

**Table 22. Standardized Status Reports - Remote and Replication Manager**

| Name of Report            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | View          |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Mobile User Status Report | <p>This report is available on all server nodes that contain mobile users. Below is a list of information available in the report:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Date and time of last extraction</li><li>■ DB Extract Size (MB)</li><li>■ DB Extract Rows</li><li>■ Local DB Size (MB)</li><li>■ Date and time of last initialization</li><li>■ Date and time of last synchronization<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Number of transactions</li><li>■ Size of transactions in MB</li><li>■ Duration of session</li><li>■ Duration of last merge on client</li></ul></li><li>■ DX files last routed from the Server</li><li>■ DX files last routed to the Server</li><li>■ DX files received and merged into the Server by this user</li><li>■ DX files received and merged on to the Local database of this user</li></ul> <p>This report also indicates whether the user is active. Otherwise, it displays last accessed date, and the name of the Routing Model associated with the mobile user.</p> | Client Status |

**Table 22. Standardized Status Reports - Remote and Replication Manager**

| Name of Report                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | View                     |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Transaction Processor Status Report | <p>This report shows the status of all active and inactive transaction processor entries in the current Enterprise server. It also includes details such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Date and time of last run</li> <li>■ Duration of last run</li> <li>■ Number of transactions and operations copied</li> <li>■ Last DX file created and removed from the docking\txnproc folder on the corresponding application server</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Processor Status         |
| Transaction Backlog Status Report   | <p>This report provides information concerning pending transactions in the queue from active mobile users and regional nodes with respect to the most recent transaction created on the HQ at the time the report was run. Fields in this report include the Mobile Web Client name and the number of pending transactions.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Transaction Log          |
| Synchronization Frequency Report    | <p>This report displays the frequency of synchronization by every mobile user for a given period of time. Each line of the report includes Mobile User ID, App Server Name, and the number of times the user has synchronized in a given period.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Synchronization Sessions |
| Synchronization Session Report      | <p>This report provides information about synchronization sessions of every mobile user for a given period of time. The report provides mobile user information and details of their synchronization sessions.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Synchronization Sessions |
| Regional Node Status Report         | <p>This report is available on all server nodes that have subordinate regional nodes. This report should contains the following information about the regional node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Date and time of last extraction</li> <li>■ Date and time of last initialization</li> <li>■ Date and time of last synchronization</li> <li>■ DX files last routed to the node from the parent server</li> <li>■ DX files last routed by the regional node to the parent server</li> <li>■ DX files received and merged into the parent server</li> <li>■ DX files received and merged into the regional database</li> </ul> <p>The report should also indicate whether the regional node is currently active or end dated and its routing group.</p> | Client Status            |

**Table 22. Standardized Status Reports - Remote and Replication Manager**

| <b>Name of Report</b>             | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <b>View</b>              |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Active Mobile Users Usage Graph   | <p>This report is available on all server nodes that have mobile users. The report takes start date as a parameter from the user and it generates the following details for each day between the start date and the current date, in the form of a graph:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ X-axis includes all the days in the specified range of dates</li> <li>■ Bar graph displays the number of cumulative inits per day</li> <li>■ Line graph displays the number of unique syncs per day. Number of unique syncs means number of mobile users that synchronized per day.</li> </ul>                                                                            | Synchronization Sessions |
| Active Mobile Users Usage Table   | <p>This report is available on all server nodes that have mobile users. The report takes start date as a parameter from the user and it generates the following details for each day between the start date and current date in the form of a table:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Date column displaying all the days in the specified range of dates</li> <li>■ Daily inits column displaying the number of initializations per day</li> <li>■ Cumulative initializations column displaying the number of cumulative inits per day</li> <li>■ Daily unique syncs column displaying the number of mobile users that synchronized per day</li> </ul>              | Synchronization Sessions |
| Transaction Router Backlog Report | <p>This report provides information about:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The number of transactions that could potentially be routed to the active mobile users or regional nodes. This is calculated with respect to the most recent transaction created on the HQ at the time the report was run.</li> <li>■ The latency of the active mobile users and regional nodes with respect to the time the report was run. The report displays the total, average, maximum, and minimum backlog and latency.</li> </ul> <p>Latency is the time difference between the last transaction routed to the mobile user or regional node and the time the report was run.</p> | Transaction Log          |

The procedure that follows describes how to access these reports.

**To access on-line Remote reports**

- 1 Navigate to the appropriate view within the Remote Administration Screen that has status reports available.

For example, you may want reports from the Synchronization Sessions view.

- 2 From the application-level menu, navigate to View > Reports.
- 3 From the selection dialog box, choose the report and language options.
- 4 Click OK and view the report.

These reports are accessible only to the Administrator except for the Client Status report. The Client Status report is available to Mobile Web Clients as long as their responsibilities include this view. For additional information about responsibilities, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

## Using the Outbox Analysis Report

The Outbox Analysis report is not an on-line report. It is created by a workflow process called Outbox Analysis Report Generator. It is available on all server nodes that have mobile users. This report is used to analyze the potential problems of data models, visibility rules, and router performance.

In this report, transactions in a mobile user's outbox are stored based on the target table name and the type of the operation. The tables that have the largest numbers of transactions are especially important to the outbox transaction analysis. This report provides information about the following for each pre-selected mobile user:

- Remote User Name
- Start time and end time of the transaction
- Top 20 transactions including target table names, database operation type, and the number of transactions

The 12 database operation types reported are:

- Insert: Insert a new record added to a table. This is different from Download, described below.

- Delete: Delete a record from a table
- Update: Update values of a record
- Cascade: Bundled operation: Delete a record and multiple cascade operations because of the delete operation
- MRUpdate: Multi-row update
- MRDelete: Multi-row delete
- Download: Record that becomes visible because of a visibility event. Previously the record was in the database, but not visible to the Mobile Web Client.
- DORemove: Delete a dock object (records from all tables that made up an instance of a dock object) instance.
- Sinset: Set-based insert (many rows at once)
- Supdate: Set-based update
- Sdelete: Set-based delete
- Others: All other operations except the 11 operations listed above

### **To run the Outbox Analysis report**

- 1** Modify the Outbox Analysis report configuration file based on the system setup and outbox analysis requirements.

The location of the Outbox Analysis report configuration file (outboxreport.cfg) is siebsrvr\bin\\${LANG}\ where \${LANG} is the language setting of the Siebel server. For example, an English-language setting is \${LANG} = enu. Therefore outboxreport.cfg is in siebsrvr\bin\enu\.

The report configuration file input parameters are:

- a** DataSource (Required field). The ODBC data source name.
- b** TableOwner (Required field). The table owner of the database.
- c** DockingDirectory (Required field). The location of the Siebel Remote docking directory. For example: siebsrvr\docking.

**d** NodeName (Required field).

If there is only one mobile user's outbox to be analyzed, put that mobile user's login name here. For example: NodeName = BCOOK.

If there are multiple users, a text file that contains the remote users' login names is required. For example, nodelist.txt with a list such as:

BCOOK

APARKER

Use the @ and full path to designate the node list file. For example, NodeName = @d:\siebsrvr\docking\nodelist.txt.

**e** Repository (Required field). SIEBEL\_REPOSITORY name.**f** StartTime (Optional field). A time stamp indicates that only those transactions created at and after this time will be processed. If StartTime is not given, it will be set to 24 hours before the current time. The time is in format YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS. For example, StartTime = 2002-6-10 14:20:00.**g** EndTime (Optional field). A time stamp indicates that only transactions created at and before this time will be processed. If EndTime is not given, it will be set to the current time. The time is in format YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.

- h** Repeat (Optional field). Indicates whether the outbox transaction processing will stop at the current time or continue to EndTime— if EndTime is set to some time after current time. Can be Y or N, default is N.

If Repeat is set to Y, and the EndTime is set to some time after current time, an outbox report will be generated every 24 hours until the EndTime is reached.

The following is an example of an outboxreport.cfg file, which is used to analyze outbox transactions in the past 24 hours.

```
DataSource = siebsrvr_datasource
```

```
TableOwner = Siebel
```

```
DockingDir = D:\siebsrvr\docking
```

```
SiebelRepository = Siebel Repository
```

```
ClientName = @D:\siebsrvr\docking\report\nodelist.txt
```

- 2** Navigate to Server Administration > Enterprise Operation > Component Requests, and click New.

In the Component Job field, select Workflow Processor Manager.

Complete the remaining fields as necessary for the particular request.

- 3** In the Component Request Parameters list, click New.
- 4** In the Component Request record, add the Workflow Process Name parameter as shown below.

In the Name field, select Workflow Processor Name.

In the Value field, select Outbox Analysis Report Generator.

- 5** In the Component Requests form menu, choose Submit request.

- 6 Navigate to siebsrvr > DOCKING > Report to read the generated report.

The name of this report is report\_ < starttimemonth > \_ < starttimedate > .txt.

For example, if the StartTime in outboxreport.cfg is set to April 9, the path to the report is siebsrvr\DOCKING\Report\report\_4\_9.txt.

---

**NOTE:** There are two ways to view the report from Siebel Remote Administration > Mobile Client Status:

1. When using the Web client, report files must be manually copied to the report server machine to a folder < homedir > \docking\report. SIEBEL\_ROOT environment variable should be set as < homedir > . If the Siebel\_Root parameter is set to an absolute folder instead of the SIEBEL\_ROOT environment variable in Actuate6\Server\rptsrvr.cfg, then report files should be copied to the docking\Report subdirectory in that folder.

2. When using the dedicated Web client, siebel.exe must be started on the same machine where the Siebel Remote Server and the report files reside.

---



This chapter compares Siebel Replication Manager with Siebel Remote and discusses the benefits. Also included are the architecture, routing groups, routing rules, and components of Replication Manager. The final section covers items supported on regional servers.

## Siebel Replication Manager

Siebel Replication Manager replicates structured and unstructured data between parent enterprise servers and subordinate enterprise servers called Regional Nodes. Each regional node is a separate Enterprise Server with a Siebel Database, Siebel Servers, and Siebel File System for a set of connected and mobile users. The set of users is based on the set of registered users at the regional node.

Each regional node is created as a child of a parent node. A parent node is another enterprise server that is either the Headquarters Node (the master node) or another regional node. A regional node contains either a full replica or a subset of the parent data, consisting of both database records and file attachments. Siebel Replication Agent periodically synchronizes each regional node with its parent node to keep the data current at both locations.

Typically, a regional node is geographically separated from the Headquarters Node, but this is not a necessary condition.

This chapter discusses how Siebel Replication Manager works. The next three chapters explain how to install, configure, and administer Siebel Replication Manager and describe how to upgrade Regional Databases.

## Comparison with Siebel Remote

Siebel Replication Manager is based on the same architecture as Siebel Remote. It is very similar to Remote but is different in the following ways:

- Siebel Remote supports data synchronization with Mobile Web Clients. Remote provides each mobile user with a laptop-based extension of the Siebel database and File System. Mobile users can access local data while they are disconnected from the parent Siebel database and File System, and must periodically synchronize their local data with the parent database.
- Siebel Replication Manager supports server-based data replication within a hierarchical set of enterprise servers. Each replicated node in a Siebel Replication Manager deployment supports multiple users. Replication Manager synchronizes data between the parent node and its subordinated nodes. Each subordinate node is an enterprise server containing a subset of users from its parent enterprise server.

### Benefits of Siebel Replication Manager

Replication Manager solves the performance issue caused by the network bandwidth limitations and latency. Placing data closer to a cluster of connected users than the Headquarters Node can improve response time. This also allows users continuous access to Siebel applications even if the network link to the Headquarters Node is unreliable or only intermittently available.

Similarly, the ability of Siebel Remote mobile users to synchronize against a local Regional Node can decrease network costs and improve the performance and reliability of the synchronization process.

### Siebel Replication Manager Architecture

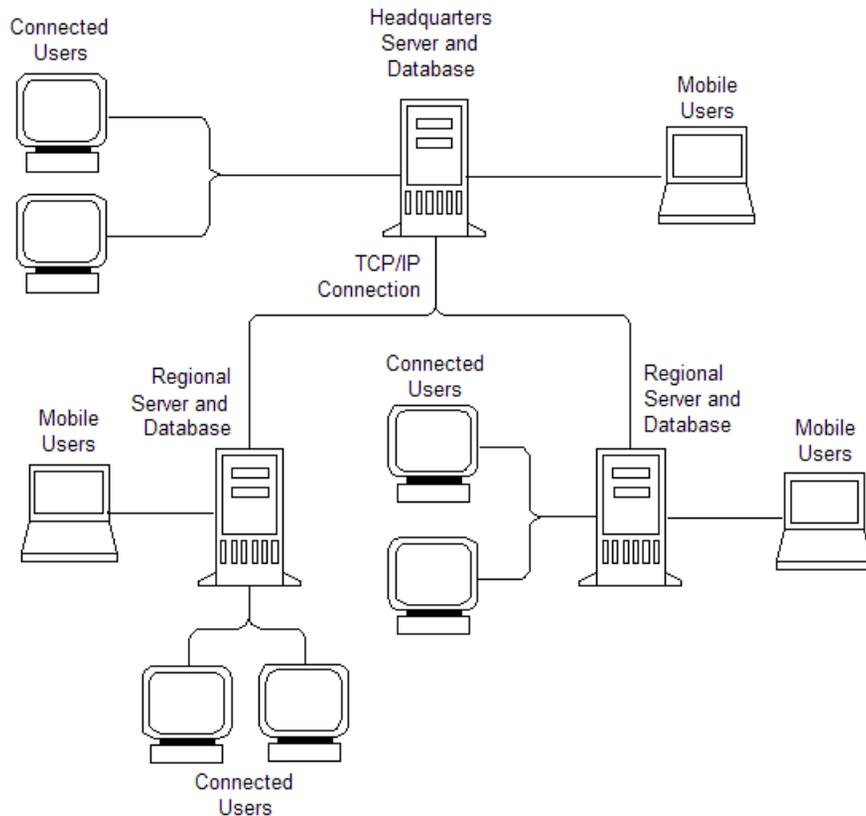
Replication Manager is a data replication technology that replicates data throughout a network of Siebel enterprise nodes. Replication Manager uses a hierarchical model to replicate data, starting with the master parent node, known as the Headquarters (HQ) node. The HQ node can replicate data to multiple subordinate nodes, known as Regional nodes. These nodes, in turn, can have subordinate nodes as well.

A Replication Manager implementation has a single master parent node, known as the Headquarters Node, and one or more Regional Nodes. The Headquarters Node contains the master set of data used by the Regional Nodes. A Regional Node can be:

- Subordinate to the Headquarters Node, and synchronize directly against it.

- Subordinate to another Regional Node, and synchronize directly against this regional node. When some Regional Nodes are created as children of other Regional Nodes, this is called a hierarchy of Regional Nodes.

Figure 9 shows a sample Siebel Replication Manager configuration, with two Regional Nodes that are children of the parent Headquarters Node.



**Figure 9. Example of a Siebel Replication Manager Configuration**

The Headquarters Node comprises the master Siebel Database Server, Siebel File System, and one or more Siebel Servers. The master Database Server and File System contain the entire set of database records and file attachments used by the nodes. Siebel Servers at the Headquarters Node manage replication to:

- Regional Nodes that are children of the Headquarters Node
- Siebel Remote Mobile Web Clients whose users synchronize against the Headquarters Node

A Regional Node can support both connected users and Siebel Remote Mobile Web Clients whose users synchronize against the Regional Server.

## Routing Groups and Routing Rules

Each Regional Node contains either a full replica of the parent node's Database Server and File System or a subset of that data. You choose which of these to use by associating a routing group with the regional database. Do this when you register the Regional Node in the Siebel Remote Administration view. This will determine how much of the data from the parent node will be replicated to the Regional Database. See [“Registering a Regional Node” on page 203](#) for more detail about registering a regional node.

Routing group options include:

- **Regional Server – Full Copy.** When the regional database is assigned this routing group, all user data is replicated. The regional database is considered a full copy, or full replica, of the parent database. However, the full replica should *not* be used as a backup system for the headquarters node for the following reasons:
  - Some system-related data may not be replicated.
  - A regional node may require re-extraction if the parent node cannot be restored properly.
  - Not every user is replicated.
  - A regional node cannot be converted to an HQ node.

---

**CAUTION:** If the Headquarters Node crashes, the full replica cannot be used as a new Headquarters Node for the reasons described above.

---

- Regional Server – Standard.** When the regional database is assigned this routing group, the data replicated to the regional database is the union of data visible to connected users assigned to the Regional Node. Siebel Replication Manager applies standard routing rules to determine what data at the parent node is replicated to the Regional Node.

There are trade-offs between these two routing groups. [Table 23](#) describes the pluses and minuses of each group.

**Table 23. Trade-Offs Between Regional dB Routing Groups**

| <b>Routing Group Regional dB</b> | <b>Pluses</b>                                                         | <b>Minuses</b>                                                                       |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Regional Server – Full Copy      | Fast data routing - no routing rule is used.                          | More data stored at Regional node.                                                   |
|                                  | Full access to every user's data.                                     | More network traffic.                                                                |
|                                  |                                                                       | Requires more powerful hardware.                                                     |
| Regional Server – Standard       | Only necessary data is routed.                                        | Txn Routers have to determine what should be routed, therefore more processing time. |
|                                  | Less data stored at Regional node, therefore requires less resources. |                                                                                      |
|                                  | Less network traffic.                                                 |                                                                                      |

Also, consider the following guideline when using the Standard Regional Routing Group: if you will route more than half of the data on the parent node to the regional node, it may be more beneficial to use the Full Copy Routing Group rather than the Standard Regional Routing Group for optimal performance.

Routing rules determine the subset of Dock Object instances that Siebel Remote replicates to each Mobile Web Client. Dock objects are groupings of tables in the database that logically form Siebel business components. Dock objects are similar to business components.

Siebel applications provide pre-configured user routing rules. See [“Dock Objects and Routing” on page 36](#) for more information.

Routing groups *cannot* be modified.

---

**NOTE:** If a dedicated user is assigned to multiple databases (one Regional or Headquarters database, and one Siebel Remote database), the data visible to that user is synchronized to each of those databases. However, a mobile user is assigned to *only one* database—HQ or Regional.

---

## Components of Siebel Replication Manager

This section lists the various pieces of software involved in setting up Regional Databases and in the normal operations of a Siebel Replication Manager implementation. For details on the listed components or utilities, see [“Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 138](#).

Applicable components and utilities for the relevant Headquarters Node, Regional Node, and Mobile Web Client are listed below for each of two cases:

- Regional Node without Mobile Web Clients or child Regional Nodes
- Regional Node with Mobile Web Clients or child Regional Nodes

### Without Mobile Web Clients or Child Regional Nodes

For a Regional Node that has no Mobile Web Clients or child Regional Nodes, the following components and utilities are involved:

- On the Headquarters Server’s Siebel Server, with references for descriptions:
  - **Transaction Processor.** See [“Transaction Processor” on page 69](#).
  - **Transaction Router.** See [“Transaction Router” on page 72](#).
  - **Transaction Merger.** See [“Transaction Merger” on page 74](#).
  - **Synchronization Manager.** See [“Synchronization Manager” on page 75](#).
  - **Database Extract (dbxtract).** See [“Database Extract” on page 35](#).

- **Generate New Database (gennewdb).** See [“Running the Generate New Database Component” on page 79.](#)
- **Parallel Database extract (pdbxtract).** A version of the database extract component that invokes extractions in parallel. It is designed as an interactive component, using server infrastructure features to perform the tasks of data extractions in parallel for a large regional node. For more information, see [“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206.](#)
- On the Regional Server’s Siebel Server:
  - **Regional Database Initialization (srvrinit).** Utility that loads dbxtract onto the Regional server.
  - **Replication Agent (repagent).** Server component that replicates the database to a Regional Node, according to the assigned Routing Group.

### **With Mobile Web Clients or Child Regional Nodes**

For a Regional Node that has either Mobile Web Clients or child Regional Nodes, or both, the following components and utilities are involved:

- On the Headquarters Server’s Siebel Server:
  - Transaction Processor
  - Transaction Router
  - Transaction Merger
  - Synchronization Manager
  - Database Extract (dbxtract)
  - Parallel Database Extract (pdbxtract)
  - Generate New Database (gennewdb)
- On the Regional Server’s Siebel Server:
  - Regional Database Initialization (srvrinit)
  - Replication Agent (repagent)
  - Transaction Processor

- Transaction Router
- Transaction Merger
- Synchronization Manager
- Database Extract (dbextract)
- Parallel Database Extract (pdbextract)
- Generate New Database (gennewdb)

## Components Supported on a Regional Node

Most Siebel Server processes *should be run only* on the Headquarters Server. Although it is possible to perform certain tasks from any Regional Server, doing so causes a delay before the data is replicated to the Headquarters Database and down to other Regional Databases. Thus data conflicts can occur.

You should only perform administration tasks (such as setting up and deactivating Mobile Web Clients using the Replication Server Administration view) when you are connected to the Headquarters Server. When using the Replication Server Administration view, be careful not to delete the Headquarters Server. Doing so will cause the processes to abort. You will then need to restore a backup or run SQL to rebuild the Headquarters Server record and the Mobile Web Clients.

---

**CAUTION:** Do not delete the Headquarters Server under any circumstances.

---

Although most Siebel Server processes should be run only on the Headquarters Server, certain features and server components can be used on Regional Nodes. [Table 24](#) lists the features and server components that are supported on Regional Nodes, along with information about certain specific exceptions.

**Table 24. Features and Server Components Supported on Regional Nodes**

| <b>Item</b>                            | <b>Type</b>      | <b>Member of</b>                                         | <b>Notes</b>                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Advanced Search                        | feature          |                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Basic Siebel Call Center functionality | feature          |                                                          | Associated with Call Center Object Manager server component.<br><br>Includes Quotes, Opportunities, Forecasting, Service Requests, Households, Campaigns, and SmartScripts. |
| Business Integration Batch Manager     | server component | Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) component group | The only component in the EAI group that is not supported on Regional Nodes is Enterprise Integration Manager.                                                              |
| Business Integration Manager           | server component | Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) component group |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Call Center Object Manager             | server component | Siebel Call Center component group                       |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Charting                               | feature          |                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Communications Configuration Manager   | server component | Communications Management component group                | Used by Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) feature.                                                                                                                       |

**Table 24. Features and Server Components Supported on Regional Nodes**

| <b>Item</b>                          | <b>Type</b>      | <b>Member of</b>                                         | <b>Notes</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Communications Outbound Manager      | server component | Communications Management component group                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Communications Session Manager       | server component | Communications Management component group                | Used by Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) feature.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| CTI (Computer Telephony Integration) | feature          |                                                          | Associated with Communications Configuration Manager and Communications Session Manager server components.<br><br>Live call transfer from a user on one Regional Node to a user on another Regional Node is not supported. |
| Database Extract                     | server component | Siebel Remote component group                            | All components in the Siebel Remote component group are supported.                                                                                                                                                         |
| Document Server                      | server component | Siebel eDocuments component group                        | For Correspondence, Proposals and Presentations features.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| EAI Object Manager                   | server component | Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) component group |                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| eService Object Manager              | server component | Siebel Call Center component group                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Generate New Database                | server component | Siebel Remote component group                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Table 24. Features and Server Components Supported on Regional Nodes**

| <b>Item</b>               | <b>Type</b>      | <b>Member of</b>                                         | <b>Notes</b>                                                                 |
|---------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MQSeries AMI Receiver     | server component | Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) component group |                                                                              |
| MQSeries Server Receiver  | server component | Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) component group |                                                                              |
| MSMQ Receiver             | server component | Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) component group |                                                                              |
| Outbound Communications   | feature          |                                                          | Associated with Communications Outbound Manager server component.            |
| Parallel Database Extract | server component | Siebel Remote component group                            |                                                                              |
| Replication Agent         | server component | Siebel Remote component group                            |                                                                              |
| Report Server             | feature          |                                                          | Can be used to generate reports on the Regional Node.                        |
| Runtime Events            | feature          |                                                          | Runtime Events that contain wait states are not supported on Regional Nodes. |

**Table 24. Features and Server Components Supported on Regional Nodes**

| <b>Item</b>                      | <b>Type</b>      | <b>Member of</b>                    | <b>Notes</b>                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic Siebel Sales functionality | feature          |                                     | Associated with Sales Object Manager server component.<br><br>Includes Quotes, Opportunities, Forecasting, Service Requests, Households, Campaigns, and SmartScripts |
| Sales Object Manager             | server component | Siebel Sales                        |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Field Service Object Manager     | server component | Field Service component group       |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| State Model                      | feature          |                                     |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Synchronization Manager          | server component | Siebel Remote component group       |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Transaction Merger               | server component | Siebel Remote component group       |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Transaction Processor            | server component | Siebel Remote component group       |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Transaction Router               | server component | Siebel Remote component group       |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Workflow Process Batch Manager   | server component | Workflow Management component group |                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Table 24. Features and Server Components Supported on Regional Nodes**

| Item                     | Type             | Member of                           | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Workflow Processes       | feature          |                                     | <p>Associated with Workflow Process Batch Manager and Workflow Process Manager components.</p> <p>The following kinds of Workflow Processes are <i>not</i> supported on Regional Nodes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Processes that are defined as persistent by an administrator.</li> <li>■ Processes that contain wait states with durations expressed in minutes, hours, or days.</li> <li>■ Processes that are triggered by Workflow Policies.</li> </ul> <p>Workflow Policies and persistent workflows are not supported in a replicated environment.</p> |
| Workflow Process Manager | server component | Workflow Management component group |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## **Siebel Replication Manager Concepts**

---

*Components Supported on a Regional Node*

# Implementing Siebel Replication Manager

# 8

This chapter describes the instructions and procedures for implementing Siebel Replication Manager. Before you proceed with the implementation, you must completely install and test the Siebel Database Server, Siebel Server or Servers, and Siebel File System in the Headquarters Node.

For instructions on completing these tasks, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.

As an overview, to implement each Regional Node you must implement four main phases:

- Install a new Enterprise Server
- Define the Regional Node
- Extract the Regional Database
- Initialize the Regional Database

[Table 25](#) shows the tasks for Implementing Replication Manager.

**Table 25. Tasks for Implementing Siebel Replication Manager**

| Task                                                              | Where Performed          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <a href="#">Installing a New Enterprise Server on page 198</a>    | New Server               |
| <a href="#">Installing the Siebel Name Server on page 199</a>     | New Server               |
| <a href="#">Installing the Siebel Server on page 199</a>          | New Server               |
| <a href="#">Installing the Siebel Database Server on page 200</a> | New Server               |
| <a href="#">Installing the Siebel File System on page 201</a>     | New Regional File Server |
| <a href="#">Defining the Regional Node on page 201</a>            | Parent Node              |

**Table 25. Tasks for Implementing Siebel Replication Manager**

| Task                                                                                    | Where Performed |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <a href="#">Registering a Regional Node on page 203</a>                                 | Parent Node     |
| <a href="#">Adding Mobile Users to the Regional Database on page 205</a>                | Parent Node     |
| <a href="#">Extracting the Regional Database on page 206</a>                            | Parent Server   |
| <a href="#">Initializing the Regional Database on page 210</a>                          | New Server      |
| <a href="#">Configuring Regional Node for Mobile Web Clients on page 218</a>            | New Server      |
| <a href="#">Starting Replication Agent on page 218</a>                                  | Regional Node   |
| <a href="#">Setting Up Additional Application Servers on Regional Nodes on page 220</a> | New Server      |

## Installing a New Enterprise Server

Installation of the Regional Node essentially requires setting up a new Enterprise Server with a different name from that of the HQ Enterprise. This includes the following Siebel components:

- Siebel Name Server
- Siebel Database Server
- Siebel Server
- Siebel File System

For more information on installing these components, see the Siebel Server installation guide for your operating system.

---

**NOTE:** Setting up the Siebel Database Server on the Regional Node is very different from setting it up on the HQ Server.

---

## **Installing the Siebel Name Server**

The Siebel Name Server includes a persistent store for configuration parameters and run-time information. The Name Server is part of the logical entity called Siebel Gateway. Each Siebel Server accesses the Name Server at start-up and periodically throughout its operation. Consequently, there must be a reliable network connection to the Name Server. For this reason, it is strongly recommended that you install a Name Server local to your Regional Node. For more information about installing the Siebel Name Server, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.

This server must be installed and running before you can proceed with the remainder of the Regional Node installation. For more information on the Siebel Name Server and Siebel Server, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

## **Installing the Siebel Server**

Each Regional Node must have at least one Siebel server, which is used to synchronize the Regional Node with its parent. This Siebel Server may also support Siebel Remote mobile users. Depending on the number of users and applications to be supported, additional Siebel Servers may be required.

Before you install the Regional Siebel Server, you may first need to install the correct ODBC driver for the RDBMS vendor. For an Oracle RDBMS, you do not need to install an ODBC driver. For other supported RDBMS vendors, you must install an ODBC driver. For the name of the required ODBC driver and version information, see the system requirements and supported platforms documentation for your Siebel application. System requirements and supported platforms documentation for all Siebel applications can be found on Siebel SupportWeb at <http://ebusiness.siebel.com/supportweb/>.

For instructions on installing the Siebel Server, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using. When prompted by the Siebel Server installation program, be certain to specify the correct connectivity information for the Siebel Name Server, Siebel File System, and Siebel Database Server on the Regional Node. Each Regional Node should have a unique Enterprise Server name associated with it.

### Installing the Siebel Database Server

For Regional Nodes that support smaller numbers of mobile or connected users, the Regional Database Server may be installed on the same physical server that will support the Regional Siebel Server.

---

**NOTE:** The Regional database server must be the same version as its parent database server.

---

Before you initialize the Regional Database, you must install the RDBMS software on the Regional Database Server to create an empty database with adequate space for data and index storage areas. Do this in accordance with the RDBMS vendor's documentation and the guidelines for configuration and space allocation. For more information, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.

You must also create the database accounts for the Siebel Tableowner and Siebel Administrator and grant them the necessary privileges. Use the Application RDBMS Tool to create these users and to grant their privileges. For example, for an Oracle RDBMS, grant these accounts connect, resource, and DBA privileges. For MS SQL, the Tableowner needs to have Security Administrator privileges on regional nodes. For DB2, the Tableowner needs to have DBA privileges. For more information, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.

---

**NOTE:** In order to successfully implement a `svrinit` on an Oracle Regional Node, the table owner has to have certain privileges. This can be done without granting DBA privileges to the table owner. The procedure that follows describes how to enable `svrinit` to work in Oracle without granting DBA privileges to the table owner.

---

#### **To enable `svrinit` in Oracle without granting DBA privileges to the table owner**

- Start SQL\*Plus and log in as the user `system` or `sys` or a DBA user and then execute the following command:

```
grant sse_role, connect, alter user, create user, create table, create session to  
<table owner> with admin option
```

If only `sse_role` is granted, an error message will be displayed.

After the RDBMS has been installed and configured and you have created the accounts for the Siebel tableowner and Siebel administrator, installation of the Regional Database Server is complete. The database objects, such as tables and indexes, are automatically created when you extract and initialize the database. These procedures are described in [“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206](#) and [“Initializing the Regional Database” on page 210](#).

---

**NOTE:** The Regional Database Initialization utility uses the default storage parameters for the data and index tablespaces. Oracle database administrators should set storage parameters appropriately before installing the Regional Database. For information on setting storage parameters, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using. For larger tables, you can modify the storage parameters after the tables are created.

---

## Installing the Siebel File System

Each Regional Node requires a local Siebel File System. Attachment files in Siebel File Systems are replicated whenever the data rows with which they are associated are replicated. For information on creating the Siebel File System, see the *Siebel Server Installation Guide* for the operating system you are using.

The File System Manager (FSM) server component manages the File System and handles interplatform security. FSM interacts directly with the Siebel File System to invoke requests for access to files. Most server components use FSM to access files by submitting requests to Server Request Manager. However, Siebel Remote components do not use FSM to access the File System.

## Defining the Regional Node

Each Regional Node must be defined by registering the Regional Database and adding any mobile users for the database. After the Regional Node has been defined, you can extract the Regional Database on its parent node and initialize it.

---

**NOTE:** After the Regional Node is extracted, you can still continue to add Mobile Web Clients to it.

---

- If you are implementing a single tier of Regional Nodes, the Headquarters Node is always the parent node.
- If you are implementing two or more tiers of Regional Nodes (called a hierarchy of Regional Nodes), the lower tiers will have Regional Nodes as their parent nodes.

---

**NOTE:** Setup of parent nodes must be completed before you can define children for them.

---

Before you continue with the process of defining a Regional Node, you must finish the setup of your organization and territory structures and run the Assignment Manager on the Headquarters Node. If you make changes to the organization and territory structures after extracting and initializing the Regional Database, you may have to reextract the Regional Database on its parent node and reinitialize it. Otherwise, the transaction routers may be overloaded.

If you are implementing a Regional Node whose parent node is another Regional Node, you should synchronize the parent node with the Headquarters Node so that the parent node has up-to-date data. This reduces the amount of data to replicate after you initialize the Regional Node.

## Registering a Regional Node

To register a regional node, use the procedure that follows.

### To register a new Regional Node

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2 From the Show drop-down list, select Replication Servers.
- 3 In the Parent Server form, select the appropriate node as the parent.

Usually, this is HQ.

The Parent Server form shows the registered databases, whether they are Headquarters or Regional.

The Regional Databases list shows regional nodes that are children of a parent database currently selected in the Databases list applet. Only the Headquarters Database or a Regional Database can be the parent of another database; a Siebel Remote mobile database cannot be a parent.

- 4 In the Regional Databases list, click the menu button and select New Record.
- 5 In the Database Name field, enter a name for the Regional Database, such as SIEBEL\_EUROPE.

---

**NOTE:** The database name you specify can contain any alphanumeric characters (letters must be uppercase only), dashes (-), or underscores (\_). The name *cannot* include spaces, a period (.), or any special characters (/ \ : \* ? “ < > |). The name cannot exceed 30 bytes (30 characters in a single-byte character set, or 15 characters in a double-byte character set). Three names are reserved and unavailable for use: TXNPROC, OUTBOX, and INBOX. The database name must be unique within the Headquarters Node and the Regional Nodes and need not match an existing database name.

---

- 6 In the Description field, type a description of the Regional Database, such as “European Regional Database.”
- 7 Specify the Routing Group to which the Regional Database will belong.

- a** In the Routing Group field, click the select button.
- b** In the Pick Routing Group selection dialog box, select one of the following:
  - Regional Server – Full Copy
  - Regional Server – Standard

The Full Copy option replicates all nonsystem data from the parent database to the Regional Database. Full Copy disregards routing rules. The Standard option uses routing rules to determine what data to replicate to the Regional Database. For more information about routing groups and routing rules, see [“Routing Groups and Routing Rules” on page 186](#).

- 8** In the Database Users field, select the Siebel users who will work as connected users against the Regional Database.

---

**NOTE:** Every mobile user on the regional node must also be a connected user, and at least one connected user for the Regional Node must be specified before the regional database can be extracted successfully.

---

- a** In the Users field, click the select button.
- b** In the Users selection dialog box, click New.
- c** In the Add Users list, select the appropriate user.
- d** Click Add.
- e** Repeat the above steps to add all users to the regional node.
- f** Click Close.

If the Regional Database will support mobile users, implement the steps in [“Adding Mobile Users to the Regional Database” on page 205](#). If the Regional Database will support only connected users, skip to [“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206](#).

## Adding Mobile Users to the Regional Database

If this regional database will support Siebel Remote mobile users, continue with the following procedure to add the mobile databases for those users. If this regional database will support only connected users, skip this section and proceed to [“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206](#).

---

**NOTE:** Every mobile user on the regional node must also be a connected user.

---

### *To add mobile databases to a Regional Database*

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2 From the Show drop-down list, select Mobile Clients.
- 3 In the Parent Server list applet, select the Server Name representing the regional database where the mobile users will work.

If this were a follow-on from the example on the previous page, this would be the newly created regional database.

- 4 Follow [Step 3](#) through [Step 8](#) of the procedure, [“To register a new Mobile Web Client on a node” on page 92](#).
- 5 Repeat [Step 4](#), immediately above, for each mobile user assigned to the Regional Database.

---

**NOTE:** A mobile user can be assigned to only one Headquarters or Regional database. Every mobile user must also be set up as a connected user in the Regional Node. Mobile Web Clients must be synchronized and then reextracted if they are to be reassigned to a different parent database.

---

# Extracting the Regional Database

Each Regional Database must be extracted on a Siebel Server of its parent node. The Regional Database synchronizes against the Siebel Server on which it is extracted. Database parallel extracts use multithreaded components to make these tasks faster than single-thread operations. Parallel dbxtract requires additional hardware, but can reduce the time to do this significantly.

This section describes the two types of dbxtract: single-thread and parallel. Before beginning either type of database extraction, you must synchronize the server components that are enabled. See *Siebel Server Administration Guide* for details.

---

**CAUTION:** You must specify at least one connected user for the Regional Node before extracting the regional database, or the extraction will fail. For information about specifying connected users for a Regional Node, see [“Registering a Regional Node” on page 203](#).

---

### **To extract database for Regional server with single thread – GUI**

- 1** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Operations.
- 2** Select the Component Requests tab.
- 3** In the Component Request form, click New.
- 4** In the Component/Job field, click the select button.
- 5** In the Component/Jobs dialog box, select the Database Extract component and click OK.

Complete the rest of the fields as appropriate.

- 6** In the Component Request Parameters list, click New and then in the Name field click the select button.

- 7** In the Job Parameters Selection dialog box, select the following parameters for the Name field and enter the corresponding value:

Client Name and enter the name of the regional node in the Value field.

Database Init Method and enter DDL in the Value field.

- 8** Add any other component parameters for the component request as appropriate.

For a list of parameters you can specify, see [Table 26 on page 209](#).

- 9** In the Component Requests form, click the menu button and then Submit request.

The Status field changes from Creating to Queued.

**To extract database for Regional server with single thread - Srvrmgr command line**

- From the Srvrmgr command line, enter:

```
start task for comp dbxtract with client=<regional node name>,  
initmethod=ddl
```

The parallel dbxtract utility (pdbxtract) is designed to improve performance when extracting large databases for one or more Regional Nodes. It is also possible to use pdbxtract when extracting Mobile Web Client databases, but pdbxtract may not improve performance significantly during Mobile Web Client extractions, so the practice is not recommended. You can run pdbxtract as a component request, from within a Siebel application, or you can run it as a task from a srvrmgr command line. The following two procedures describe these two methods of using pdbxtract.

---

**NOTE:** If you plan to use pdbxtract for concurrent extraction of two or more Regional Node databases, be sure to specify all of the applicable Regional Nodes as clients in a single pdbxtract component request or srvrmgr command. Due to the design of the pdbxtract utility, this produces better performance than starting multiple pdbxtract component requests or tasks that attempt to run concurrently.

---

### To parallel extract database for Regional server – GUI

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Operations.

---

**NOTE:** Check the value of the parameter Maximum Number of WorkQ Threads from the Server Administration > Components view. The Current Value field is the maximum number of worker threads per work queue. This parameter determines the parallelism of the process.

---

- 2 Select the Component Requests tab.
- 3 In the Component Requests form, click New.
- 4 In the Component/Job field, click the select button.
- 5 In the Component/Jobs Selection dialog box, select the Parallel Database Extract component and click OK.  
  
Complete the rest of the fields as appropriate.
- 6 In the Component Request Parameters list, click New and then in the Name field click the select button.
- 7 In the Job Parameters Selection dialog box, select the following parameters for the Name field and enter the corresponding value:
  - a Select Client Name for the Name field and enter the name of the regional node in the Value field. To specify more than one regional node, create a text file and place the name of each regional node on its own line of the file. Enter the path and file name in the Value field, preceded by the @ symbol. For example, a Windows client might specify @D:\workdir\regnodes.txt.
  - b Select Database Init Method for the Name field and enter DDL in the Value field.
- 8 Add any other component parameters for the component request as appropriate.  
  
For a list of parameters you can specify, see [Table 26 on page 209](#).

- 9 In the Component Requests form, click the menu button and then Submit request.

The Status field changes from Creating to Queued.

**To parallel extract database for Regional server – Srvrmgr command line**

- From the Srvrmgr command line, enter:

```
start task for comp pdbextract with client=<regional node name>,
initmethod=ddl
```

To specify more than one regional node, separate the regional node names with commas. For example, if RN1, RN2, and RN3 are the names of three regional nodes, the client portion of the command would be entered as follows:

```
client=RN1,RN2,RN3
```

For information on running a Database Extract, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges”](#) on page 117.

Table 26 lists component parameters you can specify for the Database Extract task.

**Table 26. Parameters for Database Extract**

Parameter	Name	Required/Optional	Description
CD Directory	CDDir	Optional	The directory on the machine of the parent node to which you write the extract files.
Client Name	Client	Required	The name of the Regional Database as entered when you registered the Regional Node. See <a href="#">“Registering a Regional Node”</a> on page 203.
Database Init Method	InitMethod	Required	Specify DDL. You must set the Database Init Method parameter to DDL. Otherwise, the database initialization will fail.

**Table 26. Parameters for Database Extract**

Parameter	Name	Required/Optional	Description
Maximum data file size	DatFileSize	Optional	Sets the maximum size of a data file in megabytes. Minimum size is 1. Maximum size is 1,000. Default is 500.  For Parallel Dbextract recommend Minimum size 100 MB.
Language Code	Language	Optional	Extract messages for the specified language. The default is ENU, for U.S. English.
Specify the mobile client version of Siebel	ClientVersion	Optional	Specifies the client software version. Default is 2000 for v7.x.

The following example shows a sample portion of the parent node's server directory tree after you run Database Extract tasks for Regional Nodes named SIEBEL\_EUROPE and SIEBEL\_PACIFIC:

```
SIEBEL
  DOCKING
    SIEBEL_EUROPE
      INBOX
      OUTBOX
    SIEBEL_PACIFIC
      INBOX
      OUTBOX
```

After you initialize a Regional Database, the Regional Node's directory structure will include similar folders for any additional Regional Nodes (given a hierarchy of Regional Nodes) and for any mobile users.

## Initializing the Regional Database

The Regional Database initialization process retrieves the database extract created in the previous step, and loads it into the Regional Database. Database objects are created and populated with data.

If you will be reinitializing a regional node with Mobile Web Clients, it is important to conduct the following test. Verify the Mobile Web Clients that synchronized with this node can reinitialize without deleting their local databases.

The Regional Database is initialized from the Siebel Server using the Regional Database Initialization utility. This must be done on the Regional Server:

- In Windows, the Regional Database Initialization utility is called `srvrinit.exe`. You can run `srvrinit.exe` in the GUI or the command-line interface.

---

**NOTE:** You must set the appropriate environment variables before running `srvrinit.exe`. Set environment variables by running the batch file `siebenv.bat`, located in the `siebel_server` directory. Run this batch file in the same command shell in which you will be running `srvrinit`.

---

- In UNIX, the Regional Database Initialization utility is called `srvrinit`. You can run `srvrinit` from the command-line interface only.

In both operating systems, the Regional Database Initialization utility is located in the `bin` subdirectory under the Siebel Server root directory.

In order for `srvrinit` to finish successfully, you need to make sure that sufficient transaction space (Rollback Segment) is available on the Regional Server Database. You may want to verify with your DBA and to increase or alter existing rollback segments if necessary.

You must also make sure that the combination of database user ID and password that you will use to run `srvrinit` exists on both the HQ Server and the Regional Node. `Srvrinit` only allows you to specify one set of credentials, but `srvrinit` is required to use those credentials for both machines. If credentials on the two machines are different, the process may not start, or may fail before completion.

If the Applications Server has multiple CPUs and disk arrays, running `srvrinit` in parallel can dramatically improve performance.

It is possible to reduce the size of the rollback segment required for `srvrinit` by reducing the `dbextract` parameter Maximum data file size (`DatFileSize`). This is because the `srvrinit` task commits per file. Therefore the smaller the file, the smaller the rollback segment. See [“Database Extract Parameters” on page 126](#) for details about `DatFileSize`.

#### **To initialize the Regional Database in the GUI**

- 1 In the same window where you ran `siebenv.bat`, navigate to `< server install on the regional node > \bin` and enter `srvrinit.exe`.

The Regional Database Initialization dialog box appears.

- 2 In the Siebel Remote Parameters fields, specify the correct values for each of the parameters used by the Regional Siebel Server to connect to the parent node. For a description of these parameters, see [Table 27 on page 214](#).
- 3 In the Regional Database Parameters fields, specify the correct values for each of the parameters used by the Regional Siebel Server to connect to the Regional Database. For a description of these parameters, see [Table 27 on page 214](#).
- 4 To start the initialization process, click Start Initialization.

The database extract will be downloaded from the server. The Siebel Upgrade Wizard launches automatically and completes the steps required to initialize the Regional Database. If you do not see a dialog box on the screen as the process executes, usually this indicates something is wrong. If this happens, check the log file in the log directory.

There will be two log files. The first one is `srvrinit.log`. The second one is either `upgwiz.log` on Windows or `srvrupgwiz1.log` on UNIX.

After the initialization utility completes successfully, setup of the Regional Database is complete. For instructions on administering the Regional Database, see [Chapter 9, “Administering Siebel Replication Manager.”](#)

The Regional Database Initialization utility (`srvrinit`) has two functions:

- It connects to the parent remote server and downloads the database extract for the regional node.
- It starts the Siebel Upgrade Wizard to carry out the actual database initialization.

#### **To initialize the Regional Database from the command line interface**

- Change to the `bin` subdirectory under the Siebel server root directory and enter:

`svrvrinit flags`

For a list of flags, see [Table 27 on page 214](#).

---

**NOTE:** If the Regional Database initialization fails (for example, due to insufficient storage space on the database), you must recover from the failure before restarting Replication Manager. To do this, restart the Regional Database Initialization utility.

---

The built-in state logging ability of the Siebel Upgrade Wizard provides the ability to restart the Siebel Upgrade Wizard. If you encounter an error during the second phase (Siebel Upgrade Wizard) of the regional database initialization process, examine the log file (UpgWiz.log on NT and svrupgwiz.log on Unix) and take appropriate corrective actions.

---

**NOTE:** The following error messages can be ignored: ORA-01921: role name 'SSE\_ROLE' conflicts with another user or role name, ORA-01017: invalid username/password; logon denied, and ORA-00942:table or view does not exist.

---

After applying the proper fix, simply restart the regional initialization process by running Siebel Upgrade Wizard again. The Siebel Upgrade Wizard remembers the progress of the initialization process and begins from where it left off. The executable name is siebupg1.exe on NT and svrupgwiz1 on UNIX.

However, there may be occasions when you simply want to restart the Regional Database Initialization process from scratch. To do so, follow the procedure below.

**To restart Regional database initialization process from scratch – NT**

- 1** On the Regional Node, navigate to \$SiebelRoot/bin.
- 2** Run the Siebel Upgrade Wizard (type the command or double-click siebupg1.exe).
- 3** Click Cancel when you are prompted to choose Yes to retry, No to abort, or Cancel to abort and clean up.
- 4** Rerun the initialization process.

#### To restart Regional database initialization process from scratch – UNIX

- 1 On the Regional Node, navigate to \$SiebelRoot/bin.
- 2 Find the file upgwiz.ucf and delete it.
- 3 Navigate to \$SiebelRoot/upgrade and delete all files with the name state.log under it.
- 4 Rerun the initialization process.

Table 27 on page 214 lists selected parameters and corresponding flags for the `srvrinit` command-line utility.

**Table 27. Parameters and Command-Line Flags for `srvrinit` Utility**

Parameter	Command Line Flag	Description	Required?
16K Table Space	/ks	For DB2/UDB installations only, the name of the appropriate 16K Table space should be provided. For more information, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.	No
32 K Table Space	/ls	For DB2 installations only, the name of the appropriate 32K Table space should be provided. For more information, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.	No
N/A	/comm	Communication parameters for modem connection.	No
Parent AppServer Name	/dockconnstring	Name of the Siebel server at the parent node where the database extract was performed.	Yes
Regional Server Name	/n	Name of the Regional Node.	Yes
File System	/filesystem	File system directory on the regional node.	Yes
Help	/? /help	Help on usage.	No

**Table 27. Parameters and Command-Line Flags for srvrinit Utility**

Parameter	Command Line Flag	Description	Required?
Index Space	/is	For DB2/UDB installations only. Space on the Regional Database where indexes should be created.	No
Initialize on new database	/init	Indicates whether the regional database is empty or not. Use Y if this is the initialization of the regional server on new database, N if it is an upgrade of the existing regional database with new dbextract. Default value is N.  Parameter should be set to Y during a major upgrade—old transactions can be invalid for the new schema and cause failure.	No
N/A	/l	Language code, default is enu.	No
ODBC Data Source	/d	Name of ODBC data source to connect to the Regional Node.	Yes
User Password	/p	Password to authenticate the Regional Database against the Headquarters Server. The password you specify will be used when the users are set up on the Regional Database.	Yes
Repository Name	/reposname	Name of repository, usually “Siebel Repository.”	Yes
Run in Parallel/Number of Threads	/para	Indicates srvrinit will run in parallel and the number of threads.	No
Schema Qualifier	/sq	For DB2/390 and AS/400 environments only, the name used to qualify all database objects created that are required by Siebel.	Yes
Server Root Directory	/homedir	Server root directory, on the Regional node where <i>SIEBEL_SERVER_ROOT</i> is the root directory of the regional Siebel Server installation.	Yes

**Table 27. Parameters and Command-Line Flags for `srvrinit` Utility**

Parameter	Command Line Flag	Description	Required?
Table Grouping File	/tg	For DB2/390 installations only. Full path to the storage control file, which is a file that contains database object declarations.	Yes
Table Owner Password/Privileged User Password	/tp	Tableowner's password on the Regional Database.  For DB2/390 and AS/400 environments, this is the same as the Privileged User Password. This is the password for Privileged User ID.	Yes
Table Owner/Privileged User ID	/t	Tableowner's logon on the Regional Database. Must have privileges to create database objects.  For DB2/390 and AS/400 environments, this is the same as the Privileged User ID. This is a user account that has the necessary database authority and privileges to create, access, and modify Siebel database objects as well as native database objects and operations required to implement the Siebel application. These environments have rigid controls on user identification—accounts must correspond to a real person.	Yes
Table Space	/ts	For DB2/UDB installations only. Space on the Regional Database where tables should be created.	No

**Table 27. Parameters and Command-Line Flags for srvrinit Utility**

Parameter	Command Line Flag	Description	Required?
User Name	/u	User name to authenticate the Regional Database against the Headquarters Server. You can use any database user associated with the Regional Database during the setup, but the user must have security admin privileges in order to create logins within the master database (such as sadmin).	Yes
N/A	/v	Verbose mode, may be set to Y or N. Default is N.	No

After completion of initialization, enable the required server components such as Siebel Remote and the appropriate object managers. For information regarding how to do this for Remote Server components, see [“Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 138](#). For information regarding how to do this for object managers and other components, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

Also, administrators need to install the Siebel Web Server Extension (SWSE). For information regarding how to do this, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using. This is essential for administrators to use the Web client to support users on Regional Nodes.

The SWSE is not required if administrators use the dedicated Web client connected to support users on Regional Nodes.

---

**NOTE:** Administrators must create users (database accounts or others) for all users who will be accessing the Regional Node because srvrinit will no longer create user accounts.

---

# Configuring Regional Node for Mobile Web Clients

If your Regional Server has Mobile Web Clients, you must start and configure Siebel Remote Server components on the Regional Server. Perform these steps in the Siebel Server Manager.

### **To configure Regional Node to support Mobile Web Clients**

- 1 Use the Generate New Database component to generate database templates on the Regional Server.

For information on generating a new database template, see [“Generating a New Database Template” on page 78](#).

- 2 Run Database Extract to extract Mobile Web Clients.

For information on running a Database Extract, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).

- 3 Start the Transaction Processor, Transaction Merger, and Transaction Router components.

For more information, see [“Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 138](#).

## Starting Replication Agent

In Siebel 7.5, Replication Agent starts 0 tasks (default setting) when Siebel Server starts. If you want to start Replication Agent tasks automatically when Siebel Server starts, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide* for information on how to change the Default Processes parameter to 1.

The procedures below describe how to start Replication Agent while Siebel Server is running.

### **To start Replication Agent – GUI**

- 1 If the default task is 0, reconfigure the Replication Agent component using the Component Reconfiguration steps.

- a** Before reconfiguring server components, verify that any external resources remain available that will be accessed by current tasks running on the existing component configuration. Also verify that any external resources are available that will be defined in the new component configuration.

Examples of external resources include the SRF and CFG files that are defined in the component configuration.

- b** Navigate to the Enterprise Configuration screen.
- c** Click the Component Definitions view tab.
- d** In the upper Component Definitions list, select the component definition you want to reconfigure.
- e** Click the menu button and then click Start Reconfiguration.

The Definition State field changes to Reconfiguring.

- f** In the lower Component Definitions list, change the Value field of parameters that you want to reconfigure for the component—in this case, change the value of the Default Task to 1.

You can also change the values of fixed parameters, but you cannot change whether parameters are fixed.

- g** After parameter values have been reconfigured, commit the new configuration by clicking the menu button and clicking Commit Reconfiguration.

The new parameter values will be merged at the enterprise level. To cancel the reconfiguration before it has been committed, click the menu button and then Cancel Reconfiguration.

- 2** If the default task is 1, then navigate to Site Map > Server Administration > Servers > Server Components.
- 3** Start Replication Agent.

For more information about this topic, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

**To start Replication Agent – *srvmgr* command line**

- From the *srvmgr* command line, enter:

```
start task for comp repagent with HQ=<DockConnString>,  
sleeptime=<#sec>,
```

Sleeptime is set to 60 sec by default, so it is not necessary to use.

## Setting Up Additional Application Servers on Regional Nodes

This section describes the procedures to add Application Servers on the Regional node. The first procedure will add an additional Applications Server. `Srvrinit` can only be invoked once and only one App Server receives the dictionary files. These files are placed in the App Server bin directory. The second App Server is not functional because it does not have a dictionary datafile. The regional server does not have repository rows, so the dictionary information is retrieved from this data file.

### **To install additional Application Servers on the Regional node**

- For the necessary steps to do this, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.

As stated above, the additional server requires a copy of the dictionary file to become operational. There are several options to copy a dictionary file from one App Server another on a Regional node.

### **To copy the data file to a new Applications Server bin directory from another**

- Copy the necessary `dicdata.dat` from the initial Application server where `srvrinit` was run.

---

**NOTE:** The dictionary data files are character-set-specific, so you need codepage dictionary caches.

---

# Administering Siebel Replication Manager

# 9

This chapter describes registering users on the regional node in addition to managing synchronization and server processes. It also includes a discussion about backup and recovery of data.

To administer Siebel Replication Manager you must implement four main phases:

- Registering Users on a Regional Node
- Managing synchronization
- Managing server processes
- Performing backup and recovery of data

Administering the four phases of Siebel Replication Manager consists of the following tasks, shown in [Table 28](#).

**Table 28. Tasks for Administering Siebel Replication Manager**

Task	Where Performed
<a href="#">Managing Mobile Databases on a Regional Node on page 222</a>	HQ Node
<a href="#">Adding Connected Users to a Regional Node on page 223</a>	HQ Node
<a href="#">Managing Synchronization on page 223</a>	Regional Node
<a href="#">Changing the Routing Group for a Regional Server on page 227</a>	HQ Node
<a href="#">Monitoring Regional Application Servers on page 229</a>	Regional Node
<a href="#">Managing Security and Authentication on page 229</a>	Regional Node
<a href="#">Performing Backup and Recovery of Data on page 230</a>	Regional Node
<a href="#">Managing Backlog in the Transaction Log Table on page 230</a>	HQ Node
<a href="#">Deactivating and Reactivating a Regional Node on page 231</a>	Parent Node

# Managing Mobile Databases on a Regional Node

If you need to add Mobile Web Clients on the regional database where they work, use the following procedure.

### **To add mobile databases to a Regional Database**

- See [“Adding Mobile Users to the Regional Database” on page 205.](#)

If you need to delete Mobile Web Clients on the regional database where they work, use the following procedure.

---

**NOTE:** Mobile users should be deactivated before deleting them. For more information about ending mobile users, see [“Deactivating and Reactivating a Mobile Web Client” on page 157.](#)

---

### **To delete mobile databases from a Regional Database**

- 1** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 2** From the Show drop-down list, select Mobile Clients.
- 3** In the Parent Server list, select the Server Name representing the regional database where the Mobile Web Client works.
- 4** In the Mobile Clients list, select the record representing the database used by a Mobile Web Client that you want to delete from the Regional Database.
- 5** Click the menu button and then Delete Record.
- 6** In the dialog box, confirm that you want to, or do not want to, delete this record.

Repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 6](#) for each Mobile Web Client you want to delete from the Regional Database.

## Adding Connected Users to a Regional Node

This section describes how to add users to the Regional Node. Before adding users to a Regional Node they must be added to the Parent Node. See *Applications Administration Guide* for adding users to the system.

### **To add connected users to a Regional node**

- 1** Make sure the user is a connected user at the HQ node.
- 2** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration.
- 3** From the Show drop-down list, select Replication Servers.
- 4** On the Parent Server form, select the parent server of the appropriate regional node.

This may be HQ or a regional node that is also a parent node.

- 5** In the Regional Databases list, select the Regional Database you desire.
- 6** On the Users field, click the select button.
- 7** In the Database Users Selection Dialog box, click New and select the user you want, and then click Add.
- 8** Repeat [Step 7](#) until you have added all necessary users, then click OK.
- 9** Create user access accounts on the regional node (db accounts or other external Directory Services such as LDAP). For more information about this topic, see *Security Guide for Siebel eBusiness Applications*.

Wait for a few hours (depending on your network and hardware configurations) to make sure that all new user data is replicated to the regional node.

## Managing Synchronization

The Siebel Server component Replication Agent, which operates on the Regional Siebel Server, synchronizes the Regional Database with its parent database.

Replication Agent must be started in order to synchronize the Regional Database. You can control Replication Agent with either the GUI or the command-line version of the Siebel Server Manager.

#### **To start Replication Agent – *srvrmgr* command line**

- From the *srvrmgr* command line, enter:

```
start task for comp repagent with <parameter1>= <value1>,  
<parameter2=<value2>,...
```

Values are from [“Parameters for Replication Agent”](#) on page 225.

#### **To stop Replication Agent - *srvrmgr* command line**

- From the *srvrmgr* command line, enter:

```
stop task for comp repagent
```

#### **To start Replication Agent – GUI**

- In Siebel 7.5, the Replication Agent cannot be started manually through the GUI Server Manager unless the Siebel Server is up and running. The component has been defined to start one task when the Siebel Server is started if the component is enabled. If the component is not started, navigate to Site Map > Server Administration > Servers > Server Components tab, and start the component. A new task should start.

## Resolving Synchronization Conflicts

There are times when Replication Manager will encounter data conflicts or corrupted transactions. Resolution rules may help to resolve these.

For further information on conflict resolution rules, refer to [“Conflict Detection and Resolution”](#) on page 53. There is currently no log file available.

## Replication Agent Parameters

Table 29 lists the parameters for Replication Agent. Replication Agent can also use generic parameters described in *Siebel Server Administration Guide*. Also, refer to the same guide for more information about managing server components with Siebel Server Manager

**Table 29. Parameters for Replication Agent**

Parameter	Meaning	Required/ Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
HQ	The Dock Connect String of the parent Siebel Server.	Required	The format is the Dock Connect String. The format is <i>network_protocol:sync_port:service:encryption</i> Available choices are: Protocol: TCPIP Sync Port: 40400, Any Service: SMI Encryption: None, MSCRYPTO, RSA Default for Sync Port: 40400 Default for Encryption: None An example may be: SIEBAPP1:TCPIP:40400
Comm Param	The colon-separated list of communications parameters used to connect to the parent Siebel Server.	Optional	This parameter is not used.
SleepTime	The period (in seconds) for which Replication Agent should sleep between synchronization sessions.	Optional	Default: 60

**Table 29. Parameters for Replication Agent**

Parameter	Meaning	Required/ Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
MaxWrite	Used to limit the size of a DX file—that is, to break DX files to be sent to the parent Siebel Server into smaller, more manageable pieces.  Replication Manager closes the existing DX file and starts writing to a new DX file when the current DX file reaches the maximum number of operations specified with this parameter.	Optional	Default: 10000
SendTxns	Sends DX files from the Regional Server to the parent Siebel Server.  If this parameter is set to FALSE, Replication Manager does not send DX files from the Regional Server to the parent Siebel Server.	Optional	Default: TRUE
RecvTxns	Receives DX files sent by the parent Siebel Server to the Regional Server.  If this parameter is set to FALSE, Replication Manager does not receive DX files sent by the parent Siebel Server to the Regional Server.	Optional	Default: TRUE
RecvFiles	Receives file attachments sent by the parent Siebel Server to the Regional Server.  If this parameter is set to FALSE, Replication Manager does not receive file attachments sent by the parent Siebel Server to the Regional Server.	Optional	Default: TRUE

**Table 29. Parameters for Replication Agent**

Parameter	Meaning	Required/ Optional	Default Value and Usage Notes
Iterations	<p>Specifies the number of times that Replication Agent will connect to the parent node.</p> <p>Typically, this parameter is set to zero (0), and the Replication Agent loops forever (or until stopped by the server administrator).</p> <p>If you set this parameter to 1 and start Replication Agent, this causes a single synchronization to occur.</p>	Optional	Default: 0
MaxCommitTxns	Specifies how many transactions will be applied before they are committed to the database.	Optional	Default: 100

The Replication Agent runs as a service-mode task, which means that after it is started, it runs continuously.

## Changing the Routing Group for a Regional Server

Each regional server has a routing group associated with it. The group determines the data that will be extracted to and transactions that will be synchronized with the regional server.

There may be times when you need to change the routing group for a regional server. The procedure below describes how to do this.

---

**CAUTION:** Changing the routing group from “Standard” to “Full Copy” requires a reextract of the regional database. Also any Mobile Web Clients associated with the Regional Node require a reextract as well.

---

#### **To change the routing group for a regional server**

- 1** If the Regional Node has Mobile Web Clients, synchronize these with the Regional Node.
- 2** Send updates in the regional node to the HQ or parent node.
- 3** Stop the activities on the regional node.  
This means no more updating.
- 4** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration screen > Replication Servers.
- 5** In the Parent Server form, select the appropriate node as the parent.  
Usually, this is HQ.
- 6** In the Regional Databases list, select the appropriate Server Name.
- 7** Click the select button in the Routing Group field.
- 8** In the Routing Model Selection dialog box, select the new Routing Group you want and click OK.  
Fill in any of the other fields on the form as appropriate.
- 9** Perform a database extract of the regional database, then initialize the regional database.  
For extracting the regional database, see [“Extracting the Regional Database” on page 206](#).  
For initializing the regional database, see [“Initializing the Regional Database” on page 210](#).

- 10 Perform database extract of Mobile Web Clients on the new regional node, and resume normal operations on the regional node.

For extracting mobile databases, see [“Creating Mobile Web Client User Accounts and Privileges” on page 117](#).

---

**NOTE:** All views are supported only on Regional Nodes that have a Routing Group of type REGIONAL SERVER - FULL COPY.

---

## Monitoring Regional Application Servers

Administrators should use the Remote Administration and Server Administration views to monitor server components and data movement from regional nodes to the parent node.

Administrators should also monitor disk space availability.

## Managing Security and Authentication

Replication Manager uses the administrator’s user name and password to log on to the Parent node. During this process, it authenticates against its parent node, usually the HQ node. It does this according to the Authentication Method set in the Synchronization Manager Component of the parent node. For more information about the Authentication Method parameter, see [Table 11 on page 75](#).

It is recommended that the administrator user name and password be the same on the HQ database and the regional databases. The Regional Application Servers and `svrinit` use the administrator database login.

### **To change the administrator password**

- 1 Change the password according to the Authentication Method.

For example, if the Authentication Method is set to Database, changing the password in the database on the Parent node requires changing the same password on the Regional Node. For information about this topic, see *Security Guide for Siebel eBusiness Applications*.

- 2** Change the password by using the Siebel Application Server on the Regional node.
  - a** From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Server Administration > Enterprise Configuration.
  - b** From the Show drop-down list, select Enterprise Parameters.
  - c** In the Enterprise Parameters list, enter an appropriate value for the Password parameter.
  - d** Stop the Siebel application services.

For more information on how to stop and start Siebel services, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.
  - e** Restart the Siebel application services for the changes to take effect.

## Performing Backup and Recovery of Data

Database administrators should perform regular backups and maintenance tasks on the Headquarters Database and on the Regional Databases. If a failure occurs on a Regional Database and it cannot be recovered to the exact point of failure, you must reextract the Regional Database on the Database Server at its parent node.

If the Regional node can be recovered to the exact point of failure, the S\_DOCK\_STATUS values of the HQ and regional nodes will be in sync. After recovery to the point of failure, the following transactions will be synchronized: (1) those that were not synchronized at the time of failure and (2) those created on the HQ and Regional nodes after the time of failure.

If transactions are lost on the HQ node, the child nodes and subsequent child nodes must be reextracted. You must also reextract the mobile users who synchronize with the Regional Siebel Server whose Regional Database failed.

## Managing Backlog in the Transaction Log Table

It is best practice to make sure the transaction processors that are not required are end dated.

It is very important to make sure old transaction processors have end dates. For example, this may happen when a transaction processor is started and then not used on a server, postupgrade. Or, this may happen when a transaction processor is started and then the server is uninstalled.

***To end date an old transaction processor***

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration screen > Processor Status.
- 2 In the Transaction Processors list, select the old transaction processor.
- 3 In the End Date field, enter an end date.

For more information about on this topic, see [“How to Handle a Large Transaction Backlog” on page 253](#).

## **Deactivating and Reactivating a Regional Node**

---

**CAUTION:** This section describes the procedure to deactivate and reactivate a Regional Node. Make sure to do a full backup of the HQ Node and the Regional Nodes before deactivating a regional node.

---

***To deactivate a regional node***

- 1 Synchronize all remaining transactions of remote users assigned to the Regional Node (if any).
- 2 Make sure all transactions have been applied to the Regional Node (for example, make sure that Txn Merger on the Regional Node has processed the .dx files).
- 3 Check that the transactions have been synchronized with the HQ node.
- 4 Move every Remote user attached to your Regional Node to either the HQ Node or another Regional Node (if any).
- 5 Shut down the Transaction Processor, Router, Merger and RepAgent on the Regional Node.
- 6 Shut down the Transaction Processor and Router on the HQ Node.

- 7** On the HQ Node, set the Effective End Date for the Regional Node in View > Site Map > Siebel Remote Administration > Replication Servers.
- 8** Restart the Transaction Processor and Router on the HQ Node.
- 9** Point the Regional Node connected users to HQ by modifying ODBC sources and the CFG file.
- 10** Delete the docking folder for the Regional Node from the Siebel Server\DOCKING directory on the HQ Node as it is no longer needed.

#### ***To reactivate a Regional node***

- 1** Shut down the Transaction Processor and Router on the HQ Node.
- 2** On the HQ Node, set the Effective End Date to NULL in Remote Administration > Replication Servers for this Regional Node, on HQ.
- 3** Reextract and reinitialize the regional database.

# Upgrading Regional Nodes **10**

This chapter describes upgrading regional nodes with and without the use of Siebel Anywhere. It also discusses schema upgrades in the DB2 regional environment.

## Upgrading the Repository for a Regional Node

A Siebel repository contains the object definitions of the Siebel application and database schema. Within any one hierarchy, every instance of Siebel Replication Manager and Siebel Remote must have the same database schema and SRF file.

---

**NOTE:** Although the Language can vary for each instance within any one hierarchy, the SRF file must be compiled from the same repository. For example, the SRF file used in a Replication environment can be a different language from the SRF file used in the HQ environment if both are compiled from the same repository. Similarly, the Language used by one Remote client can be different from another Remote client within the same hierarchy if each is compiled from the same repository.

---

When object definitions are changed—for example, to change application behavior or to add extension columns—it is necessary to distribute the changes to the Headquarters, Regional and local databases (this is known as a minor upgrade).

The application definition is compiled into an SRF file using Siebel Tools. Schema object changes are represented by a set of DDL (Data Definition Language) operations.

There are two ways to roll out repository changes to a regional environment:

- If you have Siebel Anywhere, you can use it to apply schema changes to regional and mobile users. For detailed steps, see [“Repository Upgrade with Siebel Anywhere” on page 234](#).

- If you do not have Siebel Anywhere, you must reextract and reinitialize the regional and mobile nodes after applying the repository changes and synchronizing with the physical schema. For detailed steps, see [“Repository Upgrade Without Siebel Anywhere” on page 235](#).

---

**NOTE:** It is recommended that you thoroughly test the repository changes and upgrade steps in a separate test environment before migrating them to production. The following steps assume that an SRF file has been compiled and is available for distribution.

---

## Repository Upgrade with Siebel Anywhere

This section describes upgrading a repository by using Siebel Anywhere.

### **To prepare to upgrade a repository**

- 1 Have the mobile users synchronize with the Regional Database.

---

**NOTE:** After synchronizing, mobile users should not make any changes to their local database until after the upgrade. Changes made after this point will be made with the old repository, schema, and SRF file, and so may cause problems when they are applied to the upgraded regional server.

---

- 2 Wait until every transaction is applied to the Regional Node.
- 3 Run Replication Agent to synchronize the Regional Node with the Parent Node.

This is usually the Headquarters Node.

---

**NOTE:** No more changes should be made to the Regional Node until after the upgrade. Changes made after this point will be made with the old repository, schema, and SRF file, and so may cause problems when they are applied to the Parent Node.

---

- 4 Wait until the transactions are applied to the Parent Database.

- 5 Disconnect the users and stop the server components as appropriate. Note that not all upgrades will require this step.
- 6 Upgrade the HQ Node. See *Siebel Tools Reference* for more information on installing a new repository.
- 7 Restart server components and make the system available to users.

**To build the upgrade kit for the database schema**

- Refer to *Siebel Anywhere Administration Guide* for the necessary procedures.

**To distribute the upgrade kits and finish the upgrade**

- Refer to *Siebel Anywhere Administration Guide* for the necessary procedures.

## Repository Upgrade Without Siebel Anywhere

This section describes upgrading a repository without the Siebel Anywhere option.

**To upgrade a repository without Siebel Anywhere**

- 1 If the Regional Node has mobile users, instruct the mobile users to synchronize with the Regional Node and to stop working on their local databases until further notice.

---

**NOTE:** After synchronizing, mobile users should not make any changes to their local databases until after their databases have been reinitialized. Changes made after this point will be lost.

---

- 2 Wait until the transactions have been applied to the Regional Node.
- 3 Run Replication Agent to synchronize the Regional Node with the Parent Node. This is usually the Headquarters Node.

---

**NOTE:** No more changes should be made to the Regional Node until after it has been reinitialized. Changes made after this point will be lost.

---

- 4 Wait until the transactions are applied to the Parent Node.

- 5** If appropriate, disconnect the connected users on the Parent Node.
- 6** Stop the server components as appropriate.
- 7** Apply the upgraded repository to the Headquarters Node and synchronize the repository with the physical schema.  
  
For more information, see *Siebel Tools Reference*.
- 8** Allow connected users at the Headquarters Node to reconnect and continue working using the new SRF file.
- 9** Use Generate New Database to generate a new database template on the Parent Node.
- 10** On the Parent Node, perform a database extract of the Regional Node.
- 11** Initialize the Regional Node.
- 12** Allow connected users at the Regional Node to reconnect and to resume work using the new SRF file.
- 13** Generate a new database template on the Regional Node.
- 14** Extract each Mobile Web Client on the Regional Node.
- 15** Allow mobile users to reinitialize their local databases and to resume work using the new SRF file.

# Troubleshooting Remote and Replication Manager **11**

This chapter includes reference information, FAQs, and scenarios for Remote and Replication Manager to help resolve problems. The material discusses components, administrative tasks, and specific situations.

## Setting Up Remote Server and Remote Clients

This quick reference sequence provides an overview of the steps to set up Siebel Remote on both the server and the Mobile Web Client. The purpose is to provide a “quick look” so you can review or learn the material.

The following sequence of steps outlines the general flow to set up Siebel Remote Server and Remote Clients for an out-of-the-box installation of your Siebel application.

- 1** Make sure employees are set up; navigate to Application Administration > Employees > Employees.

The employee must have at least one position and responsibility. The fields cannot be blank.

- 2** If your deployment includes regional nodes, define the appropriate employees as users on their corresponding regional nodes.

For details on how to do this, see [“Registering a Regional Node” on page 203](#).

- 3** Set up users as Mobile Web Clients: navigate to Remote Administration > Mobile Clients.

- a** Add Mobile Web Clients here.

- b** At a minimum, fill in the fields Mobile Client, User Login Name and Routing Model.

For example: HALACON, HALACON, MOBILE CLIENT - STANDARD

- 4** Start a “Generate New Database” process. Wait for it to finish successfully.
- 5** If the Siebel Server has not had Mobile users set up on it before, start a “Database Extract Process” for the Mobile Web Clients.
  - a** Enter \* in the Client Name field in the Parameter Overrides view.
  - b** Wait for this task to finish successfully.
- 6** If the transaction process is not currently running, start a transaction processor process.

For details to start a transaction processor component, see [“Starting Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 67](#).
- 7** If the transaction router process is not currently running, start a transaction router process.

For details to start a transaction router component, see [“Starting Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 67](#).
- 8** If the transaction merger process is not currently running, start a transaction merger process.

For details to start a transaction merger component, see [“Starting Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 67](#).
- 9** Make sure that you set up the Mobile Web Client hardware and software.
- 10** Make sure the appropriate CFG files for your Mobile Web Clients are correctly set up.

Especially verify the contents of the section titled [Local]. Values of CHANGE\_ME are indicators that these values probably require changing.

- 11 Run a Mobile Web Client session on a mobile user's PC and attempt to connect to the local database.

It will not exist yet and will require initialization of the local database.

If this step is successful, it means the mobile user is set up and initialized correctly.

## About Merge Conflicts Related to Assignment Manager

If the `LogTxnChgOnly` (Log transaction on change only) parameter for Assignment Manager is set to `True`, your Siebel Remote implementation may log an unusually high number of merge conflicts. You can safely ignore many of these merge conflicts. The following paragraphs describe why this phenomenon occurs, and provide an example of a sequence of events that produces such merge conflicts. For information about how you can distinguish between harmless merge conflicts and merge conflicts that do concern your data, see [“Distinguishing Between Harmless and Meaningful Merge Conflicts”](#) on page 240.

### Why `LogTxnChgOnly` Affects the Quantity of Merge Conflicts

When `LogTxnChgOnly` is set to `True`, Assignment Manager does not log transactions for changes that only affect the `ASGN_DT` field for a record. The `ASGN_DT` field records the most recent date and time that Assignment Manager assigned that record. This field is not normally visible in Siebel applications.

Since transactions are not logged when only the value of the `ASGN_DT` field changes, these changes are not sent to Mobile Web Clients. Not sending these changes causes a discrepancy between the version of the record stored on the server and the versions stored in Mobile Web Client databases. The discrepancy causes no immediate problem, since it does not affect any of the visible data fields for the record. Allowing such harmless discrepancies can vastly reduce the amount of data that must be transferred to a Mobile Web Client during synchronization.

However, if Assignment Manager updates *visible* data fields in the record at a later time, a transaction *is* logged. In this case, the discrepancy in `ASGN_DT` field values is detected during the Mobile Web Client's next synchronization attempt, and is reported as a merge conflict.

#### **Example of a Sequence of Events that Produces a Harmless Merge Conflict**

The following paragraphs describe an example of a sequence of events that produces a harmless merge conflict. For clarity, the value of the ASGN\_DT field is shown here as a date only, although the field actually includes both date and time.

- 1** The server runs Assignment Manager and changes the value of several fields in record X, including setting the value of field ASGN\_DT to 2003-10-29. Because values are changed in one or more visible fields, a transaction is logged.
- 2** A Mobile Web Client synchronizes and receives the updated values for all fields in record X, including the value of 2003-10-29 for the ASGN\_DT field.
- 3** The server runs Assignment Manager and changes the value of the ASGN\_DT field to 2003-10-30, but does not change values in any visible fields, so no transaction is logged. The change to the value of the ASGN\_DT field is not transmitted to the Mobile Web Client.
- 4** The server runs Assignment Manager and changes the value of several fields in record X, including setting the value of field ASGN\_DT to 2003-10-31. Because values are changed in one or more visible fields, a transaction is logged.
- 5** The Mobile Web Client synchronizes and receives the updated values for all fields in record X, including the value of 2003-10-31 for the ASGN\_DT field. This causes a conflict, because the transaction updates the value of the ASGN\_DT field from 2003-10-30 to 2003-10-31, but the current value of ASGN\_DT in the local database is 2003-10-29. The old value in the transaction does not match the current value in the local database, so a conflict is reported.

#### **Distinguishing Between Harmless and Meaningful Merge Conflicts**

The following procedure describes how to distinguish between harmless merge conflicts caused by changes to ASGN\_DT fields, and conflicts that do involve your data. For an explanation of the cause of merge conflicts involving ASGN\_DT fields, see [“About Merge Conflicts Related to Assignment Manager” on page 239](#).

##### ***To distinguish between harmless and meaningful merge conflicts***

- 1** Using the Mobile Web Client, navigate to User Preferences > Remote Status.
- 2** In the Remote Status list, select a synchronization session record that interests you.

- 3 In the Session Actions list, select a record that has the following value in the Item Name field:
  - Apply database changes
- 4 In the Session Action Details list, inspect the messages in the Item Details field. [Table 30](#) describes how to interpret these messages.

**Table 30. Interpretation Guidelines for Synchronization Conflict Messages**

Item Details Message Characteristics	Guideline
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Identifies who updated the record. For example, “Updated by HKIM.”</li> <li>■ Identifies a visible data field. For example, “Field: Product Under Warranty Flag, New Value: Y, Old Value: N”</li> </ul>	Meaningful. Inspect server and client values to determine whether conflict was resolved appropriately.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Does not identify who updated the record. For example, “Updated by ?”</li> <li>■ Identifies an Assignment Date field. For example, “Field: Assignment Date, New Value: 2003-11-04 11:09:18.000000, Old Value: 2003-10-25 10:10:02.000000”</li> </ul>	Safe to ignore.

## Replication Agent

Replication Agent is a component of Replication Manager that resides on the Regional Siebel Server. It synchronizes the Regional Database with its parent database.

### Replication Agent Failure Due to Special Characters During an Update

You may encounter situations where special characters cause Replication Agent to fail during an update. Use the following procedure to find the transaction IDs involved with this failure.

### To find the transaction (TXN\_ID) causing this problem

- 1 Run the following query on the Server database:

```
SELECT MIN(TXN_ID), MAX(TXN_ID) FROM S_DOCK_TXN_LOG
```

- 2 From the Siebel Server machine, go to a DOS prompt and type the following:

```
cd server_root_dir\bin
```

```
siebenv
```

```
txnutl /u SADMIN /p SADMIN /s MIN(TXN_ID) /e MAX(TXN_ID) /d dbo /  
c <SiebelServerDataSource> /w dx-file > output_file
```

where:

- /u is the user name of the Admin account
  - /p is the password of the Admin account
  - /s is the output of MIN(TXN\_ID) of the previous query
  - /e is the output of MAX(TXN\_ID) of the previous query
  - /w is dx-file name the transactions of S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG are written to in the format of a dx-file
  - /d is the schema owner (dbo)
  - /c is the Siebel Server ODBC Data Source used to connect to the database
  - dx-file is the file you have to check to find the transaction that caused the problem.
- 3 Open the output file with any editor and go to the end of the file. You will see something like the following:

```
Txn Type: S
```

```
Txn Id: 49051
```

```
Src Node: 16
```

```
Created By: 1-2G-162
```

```
DLog Row Id: 16-RHP
```

The TXN\_ID in this case is 49051.

## Synchronization Manager

This section describes how to analyze selected problems that can be encountered with Synchronization Manager, plus possible causes and workarounds.

### SynchMgr Situation

The following error was encountered in SynchMgr\_xxx.trc/log files:

- DCK-00123: Error opening file (null) for read

```
[ERR33] (drl.cpp 5(206) err=1700123 sys=1400022) DCK-00123: Error opening file d:\siebfile\S_DOC_PPSL_0-CQNE_0-S9.saf for read
```

Possible Causes:

- Unable to access the File System directory.
- File Attachments do not exist in the File System.

If this occurs with only one particular Mobile Web Client, make sure the System DSN is set up correctly.

Verify that the attachments are available in the file system. Siebel eBusiness Applications come with a set of default templates. Make sure you have copied the files from the <dbsrvr>\files to the Siebel File System.

- DCK-00164: Error connecting to datasource (null) ((null))

Possible Causes:

- Siebel Gateway and Services were started while database server was shut down.

Workaround:

- Navigate to Server Administration and shut down the Synchronization Manager and then restart it again. Refresh the applet to make sure that Synchronization Manager has a state of running.

For more details about Synchronization Manager, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide* and [“Starting Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 67](#). SynchMgr\_xxx contains the following error message: (syncsrvr.cpp 22(692) err = 1700213 sys = 0) DCK-00213: Another Synch Server is already servicing this node.

Possible Causes:

- Interrupted synchronization sessions. If a client synchronization session stops or disconnects abnormally, the Siebel Synch. Manager may still remain running.
- If a user connects through a dial-up line via TCP/IP and the line is disconnected, then the TCP/IP session stays active for a certain time. The Synchronization Manager task cannot close until the TCP/IP session is finally released.

Workaround:

- Configure the TCP/IP timeout on the Applications Server. Contact your System Administrator for information about the TCP/IP keep-alive functionality.
- SynchMgr\_xxx contains the following error message: “DCK-00214: Directory (null) does not exist”

Possible Causes:

- Docking directories of Mobile Web Clients have been deleted.

Solution:

Reextracting the mobile users will re-create these docking directories and client should be able to download the latest snapshot files and then synchronize with the server again.

## FAQ: What to Do with an Initialization or Synchronization Problem

- 1 Look in the <SiebelClientInstall>\log directory for files:
  - upgwiz\*.log and syncthrd\*.log (in case of an initialization problem)
  - syncthrd\*.log (in case of a synchronization problem)
- 2 Find the error message in the LOG file.
- 3 With error messages, search this troubleshooting chapter and SupportWeb.
- 4 If this does not help resolve the problem, follow [“How to Set Client-Side Logging” on page 161](#) to obtain additional information in the LOG file.
 

Does the additional information help to resolve the problem (troubleshooting chapter and SupportWeb)?
- 5 If not, log a Service Request and send the \*.log information with the additional trace information ([Step 4](#)) to support@siebel.com.

## FAQ: Long Initialization/Synchronization Times

When you receive the CSSSISDockFgetACKMsg msg error during initialization or synchronization there are basically two cases to differentiate:

- 1 You are working in a network environment.
 

In this case the error might have occurred due to very heavy network traffic.
- 2 You are working over a phone line.
 

In this case one possible reason could be an unstable telephone line.

  - If possible, you should try different telephone lines.
  - Another reason could also be a bad modem, either on the client side or the server side.
  - In either case, work with your IT department to troubleshoot the problem.

## FAQ: Cannot Connect to Server During Synchronization

As the text of the error message indicates, there is a problem with the connection between the Siebel Remote client and the Siebel server.

If this error occurs, do the following:

- Ping the Siebel server from the client by running the following command from the DOS window on the client machine:

```
ping <server machine name>
```

If the server cannot be reached by name, try the IP address. The expected result is that the ping is able to resolve the host name to an IP address and connect to the machine.

- Before synchronizing again, refer to [“How to Set Client-Side Logging” on page 161](#) to increase the level of client-side tracing. It is located in the \“log” directory of the client. It is named SyncThrd\*.log. Send this file to Siebel Technical Support for review.

If the connection is established on the server then there will also be a sync manager trace file. It is named SyncMgr\*.log located in the Siebel server log directory.

Check the DockConnString in the [Local] section of the client’s CFG file and confirm that it is set to the host name of the Siebel server with which this client will synchronize. Send the client’s CFG file to Siebel Technical Support for review as well.

It is recommended that you specify the DockConnString in the following format:

- Siebel server machine name: network protocol: sync port #: server: encryption.
- Siebel server machine name, assuming the default synchronization port number is 40400.

Remote users use the DockConnString parameter in the CFG file to synchronize to the server. For details regarding the syntax of the DockConnString parameter, see [“Synchronization Parameters” on page 85](#).

- If the Synchronization Manager component is not running, check the following:

- %Siebel\_server%\log\SynchMgr\* log file.
- If the failure message is Login Failed, then verify that Synchronization Manager uses the correct user name and password when connecting to the database.

This should be the system administrator user (SADMIN) and not the database tableowner (SIEBEL or dbo). The system administrator's password in the database must match the password registered in the Gateway Server. If the SADMIN password changed in the database but not in the Gateway Server, users will not be able to log in to Server Manager views. To register a new password with the gateway, verify that the Gateway Server service is running and complete one of the options below from the %Siebel\_Server%\bin command prompt.

**Using Server Manager**, enter:

```
srvrmgr /g <GatewayName> /e <EnterpriseName> /u <username> /p  
<password>
```

/g: specifies the host name of the machine running the gateway

/e: enterprise server name

/u: Siebel Administration username

/p: Siebel Administration password

When the Server Manager prompt appears, type:

```
srvrmgr> change ent param Password=NewSADMINPassword
```

Type `exit`.

For more information about Server Manager, see *Siebel Server Administration Guide*.

**Using `svrcfg`**, enter:

```
srvrcfg /g <GatewayName> /e <EnterpriseName> /m enterprise /w  
Password=NewSADMINPassword
```

Stop and restart the Siebel server service to invoke the change.

---

**NOTE:** Use caution when changing the password—an incorrect entry will cause errors throughout your system.

---

If the password of the database account is unchanged, the password of the system administrator account can be changed in the Server Manager views.

#### **To view the current sync manager port number**

- 1 From the application-level menu, select View > Site Map > Server Administration > Components.
- 2 From the Server Components list, click Query and run a query for the Synchronization Manager component.
- 3 From the Server Components list, select the Synchronization Manager component for the appropriate Siebel Server.
- 4 Click the Components Parameters tab, and click Query to run a query for the Static Port Number parameter.

The port number in use is in the column Current Value.

#### **To change the current sync manager port number**

- 1 Navigate to the Component Parameters tab as in the previous procedure.
- 2 In the Component Parameter list, run a query for the Static Port Number parameter.
- 3 Enter the new value in the Value on Restart field.
- 4 Restart the server.
- 5 Test the connection by copying a CFG file, from a user that is able to connect or synchronize, onto the client machine where the behavior is occurring.

Observe the results and compare the two CFG files for any noticeable differences.

## What to Do When Transaction Merger Fails

This section describes a temporary workaround to restart Transaction Merger until the root cause has been found.

### To work around a Transaction Merger's failure

- 1 Check out the log file (TxnMerge\*.log) to find the Mobile Web Client and the \*.dx-file this is happening for. In the example following, the Mobile Web Client is SADMIN and the \*.dx is 00000009.dx.

---

**CAUTION:** Renaming or deleting the DX files in siebsrvr\Docking\Client\Inbox directory is not allowed. If you rename or delete DX files you will lose the transactions and will have to reextract the Mobile Web Client.

---

```
[TRC35] >>> Processing Client: SADMIN
```

```
[TRC35] File:
c:\Sea704\Siebsrvr\docking\SADMIN\inbox\00000009.dx
```

```
[TRC33] 2000-10-06 12:09:51 Client: SADMIN, File:
c:\Sea704\Siebsrvr\docking\SADMIN\inbox\00000009.dx.
```

```
[DBG33] 2000-10-06 12:09:51 Message: Generated SQL statement:,
Additional Message: SQLExecute: INSERT INTO dbo.S_OPTY_PROD_X
(ATTRIB_01, ATTRIB_02, ATTRIB_03, ATTRIB_04, ATTRIB_05,
ATTRIB_06, ATTRIB_07, ATTRIB_08, ATTRIB_09, ATTRIB_10, ATTRIB_11,
ATTRIB_12, CONFLICT_ID, CREATED, CREATED_BY, LAST_UPD,
LAST_UPD_BY, MODIFICATION_NUM, PAR_ROW_ID, ROW_ID)
```

```
VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?)
```

---

**NOTE:** In the log file, following the line with the series of question marks, you can find the actual values, which are bound to each by the question mark.

For example:

```
INSERT INTO dbo.S_EMPLOYEE(NAME, AGE, SEX)
VALUES(?, ?, ?)
NAME:    Bill
AGE:     40
SEX:     M
```

---

```
[DBG33] 2000-10-06 12:09:51 Message: Error: An ODBC error
occurred,
```

```
Additional Message: Function: DICInsRowExecStmt; ODBC operation:
SQLExecute
```

- 2** If the error is specific to one Mobile Web Client, rename the INBOX directory for this Mobile Web Client (that is, from C:\Sea704\SiebSrvr\Docking\Sadmin\Inbox to C:\Sea704\SiebSrvr\Docking\Sadmin\Inbox\_Old) and restart Transaction Merger.
- 3** If Transaction Merger runs after that, this is only affecting one Mobile Web Client. If Transaction Merger fails again, you can expect that the failure applies to the Mobile Web Clients.
- 4** Open a Service Request on the SupportWeb and send the related \*.dx-file and the trace file for further analysis.

---

**NOTE:** This is a temporary workaround because the specific Mobile Web Client will not be able to synchronize.

---

## **Users Who Cannot See Records When Connected Locally**

There are many reasons why mobile users may not see a record through the user interface when connected to their local database. To troubleshoot such an issue, the instructions in this FAQ may help you determine the reasons for the behavior.

The following paragraphs describe several situations and tips to solve the problems.

Navigate to the Remote Administration > Mobile Clients view. Make sure the Mobile Client has the appropriate routing model. In addition, make sure the Receiving Transactions check box is checked. If the routing model is set correctly but Receiving Transactions is not checked, search the database extract log file for errors. It is an indication that database extraction is not successful.

Navigate to the Application Administration > System Preferences view; verify that the 'Docking: Transaction Logging' parameter value is set to True. If this parameter is set to False, you should set it to True, after which you must reextract the Mobile Web Clients.

Make sure the transaction processor and router are running and also check the transaction processor(txnproc\_XXX.log) and router(txnrout\_XXX.log) log files for errors.

For limited visibility records, make sure that the record in question is visible in one of the "My..." or "My Team's" views when the same user is connected directly to the server. For Organization, Opportunity, Contact and Service Request Dock Object, these records are also routed to the mobile users if the records are available through drilldown from a My or My Team's view. A list of limited and Enterprise visible objects can be found by using Siebel Tools to query the repository.

Use the visutl.exe utility to check if the mobile user has visibility to the records. Review the log file generated by this utility. If visutl.exe reports that the record is not visible, this means that the record does not reside on the mobile user's local database. You can find a logical explanation for what makes certain records visible to the mobile users by logging into Siebel Tools. Using the Flat tab, navigate to the Dock Object Table in the Object Explorer. Once you have done this, go back to the Types tab, and choose Dock Object > Dock Object Visibility Rule object type. In the Dock Object Visibility Rule object List Editor window, right scroll to the Comments field. You will find the explanation for each rule that is associated to that dock object. Refer to the FAQ question, "What is visutl and how do I run it?"

If the `visutl.exe` reports that the record is visible, log on using `isql55` to verify if the record resides on the local database. Refer to FAQ, “How to log on a local database using `isql55`.”

Once you have logged on successfully, run the following query:

```
Select * from SIEBEL.<TABLENAME> where ROW_ID = '<Rowid of the non-visible record>'
```

If the record resides on the local database but is not visible through the user interface, and if you are using a custom SRF file, try to log in to the Siebel application using the standard SRF file. If the records are visible, something in your configuration is filtering out the records. Investigate your configuration.

In addition, you may also start up your Siebel Application with the `/S` option to spool out the SQL that is being run on the view that does not show the record. Look at the query/joins that are being run to see what may be filtering out the records that should be visible on the User Interface. Refer to the Technical Note, “Using the `/S` Option to Examine the SQL generated by Siebel Enterprise Applications.”

If the record does not reside on the local database, this indicates a potential problem with the Siebel Remote processes. Confirm that the user has synchronized successfully with the remote server. Check the `Synthrd_xxx.log` files for any errors. If transaction, router and synchronizing are fine, reextract the user and see if the record is visible after the reextraction.

If you are using a collating sequence other than 1252, read Alert, “The SQL Anywhere collating sequence treats characters and their accented or special counterparts as duplicates.”

If you still need assistance, send Technical Support the `visutl.log` located in the current directory where you run the `visutl.exe` for analysis. In addition, you may perform the following test:

Create a couple of transactions in which you want the Mobile Web Client to have visibility, then start the transaction processor. Next, you start the transaction router with the following event levels set: `GenericLog = 4`, `Trace = 4`, `SqlparseandExecute = 4`. Send the transaction processor and router trace file and the DX files in the `<SiebelRoot> \docking\<client> \outbox` folder to `support@siebel.com` for analysis.

## How to Handle a Large Transaction Backlog

This section discusses how to handle a large transaction backlog in the transaction log table.

With the System Preference Docking:Transaction Logging set to TRUE, your Siebel application will record transactions to the transaction log table (S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG). The Transaction Processor (txnproc) is responsible for deleting entries from this table—after all txnprocs in the system have copied them to the Application server TXNPROC directory. Enterprise visible data will be routed to the active Mobile Web Clients.

The backlog is the number of transactions in S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG, or large number of DX files in TXNPROC directory. For example, to see the backlog in the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG select count (TXN\_ID) from S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG. Alternatively you may wish to know the oldest transaction, for example select min(CREATED) from S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG. However, a backlog of 1000 transactions is not usually considered a problem.

If you are experiencing a large number of rows in S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG, or large number of DX files under TXNPROC directory, follow these steps:

- 1** Check that Transaction Processor and Transaction Router or Routers are running.

In the Server Tasks screen (Siebel Administration > Servers > Server Tasks), check the Task State and Status.

At least one Transaction Processor, Router, and Merger are required per Remote server. Multiple Routers and Mergers can be run on one Remote server. Multiple Routers are often recommended.

- 2** Check that Transaction Processor is processing Transactions.

Check by looking at the Siebel Remote Administration > Transaction Processor Status view. Here you will find information about the last transaction and last file, created by Transaction Processor in the TXNPROC directory on your Siebel Server. Under normal circumstances and if there are not any problems, these keep increasing.

#### **3** Check for old TP entries.

There may be old transaction processor entries in the S\_NODE table that are no longer in use; either they have been left active after an upgrade or perhaps they are associated to a Siebel server that is no longer in use. It is a best practice to make sure transaction processor entries that are not required are end dated.

#### **4** Check for Transaction Processors without end dates.

It is very important to make sure old transaction processors have end dates. For example, this may happen when a transaction processor is started and then not used on a server, postupgrade, or a transaction processor is started and then the server is uninstalled.

To end date an old transaction processor, see [“Managing Backlog in the Transaction Log Table.”](#)

#### **5** Changes in positional Hierarchy, Territory realignments, or large EIM loads can also create a large number of Transactions.

The higher in the hierarchy you change, add, or delete one or more positions, the more transactions will be created.

When using EIM, the parameter LOG\_TRANSACTIONS\_TO\_FILE defaults to TRUE. This means EIM will log transactions under the File\_System\eim folder with only one marker logged into the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG table. If the parameter is set to FALSE, EIM will use set-based transaction logging to reduce database contention for S\_DOCK\_TXN log by only recording one txn per EIM set in S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG.

It can take some time for the Transaction Processor and the Router to work through the created backlog and route the changes to your mobile users. Multiple routers or reextracting the mobile users will speed up processing.

#### **6** If you are still having a problem, contact Technical Support and provide Transaction Processor and Router log files with the following trace flags set:

- Change the following log events (in srvrmgr):
  - evtloglvl sql = 4
  - sqlParseandExecute = 4

- genericlog = 4
  - Run the Siebel Remote component with SQL Flag = 2, Trace Flag = 1
- 7** Also run the following from the <Siebel\_server\_root> \bin directory, and supply the two TXT files to Siebel Technical Support:

Siebenv

```
txnutl /u SADMIN /p SADMIN /C <ODBC Datasource> /D <tableowner> /  
w TxnOut1.txt /K LOWSCANMARK /L Y /Z N > TxnOut2.txt
```

In addition to the steps above, you should examine the indexes on S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG and S\_DOCK\_TXN\_SET.

The P1 index is on an ID column that counts upwards. Lower IDs are deleted. This can lead to many index leaf rows pointing to rows that are no longer there.

For this reason, you should rebuild the indexes in the S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG and S\_DOCK\_TXN\_SET tables regularly.



# Client-Side Merge Issues on the Server

# A

This appendix describes how to repair orphaned records on the server created by the merge process occurring while child records are being created on Mobile Web Clients. The solution involves tracking the merge process and then, using a workflow process, reassociating the orphaned child records with their appropriate parents.

## Definition of the Problem

The combination of actions below will create orphaned child records on the server.

- Merging on the server that deletes a parent record.
- Before invoking a synchronization session that would merge the same records on the local database, the user creates or associates child records to the parent that was deleted on the server.
- When synchronization does occur, the child record associated with the deleted parent is orphaned on the server.

The following example illustrates the sequence of events that may occur to create the client-side merge problem. Keep in mind that a client-side merge refers to actions initiated from the user interface rather than another type of merge such as an EIM merge.

To begin, both the Mobile Web Client and the server have equivalent records such as:

- Account A with Activity 1 as a child record
- Account B with Activity 2 as a child record

The client-side merge problem arises *if* the following sequence of activities takes place:

- 1** Account A and Account B are merged on the server into Account B. As a result, the following happens on the server:
  - Account A is deleted.
  - Account B has both Activity 1 and Activity 2 as children. This happens because the object manager issues a multirow update statement for each possible child table of the Account A table.
  - The above actions generate transactions that are placed in the outbox for the Mobile Web Client.
- 2** Before the transactions in Step 1 are routed to the Mobile Web Client, the following occurs:
  - The Mobile Web Client inserts Activity 3 as a child record of Account A and synchronizes.
- 3** The Mobile Web Client synchronizes and the following occurs:
  - Activity 3 is routed up to the server. An Activity 3 is created with parent Account A on the server. This activity is an orphaned record because its parent does not exist on the server.
  - The merge operations on the server described in Step 1 are sent down to the Mobile Web Client. Activity 3's parent is reset to Account B on this Mobile Web Client. Consequently, the client-side merge does not create an orphaned record on the Mobile Web Client.

## Solution

This section describes the solution and how to repair the client-side merge problem.

The solution is to provide the ability to repair orphaned data on the server. To do this you will use the following:

- Log all merge transactions on the server
- Use a batch process to reassociate orphaned child records with the appropriate parents using the log

- A view that shows the content of the log for administration and system management

For organizations with the client-side merge problem, use the following procedures to repair the orphaned child records.

#### **To turn on CSM Logging**

- 1** Navigate to the Application Administration screen and from the Show drop-down list, click System Preferences.
- 2** Select System Preference Name = CSM Logging.
- 3** Set the System Preference Value = TRUE.
- 4** Restart the Siebel Server.

This allows system preferences to take effect.

- 5** Restart the Siebel Remote components.

See [“Starting and Stopping Siebel Remote Server Components” on page 138](#).

The next step should be to create a workflow process that calls the appropriate business service. Create a workflow process that calls the CleanUp business service. To control the size of this log, create another workflow process to remove old merge transactions.

The following two procedures describe how to create these workflows. Two workflows should be created for each method of CSM Log Service.

#### **To repair orphaned child records**

This is also called the CleanUp () function.

- 1** Create a workflow with three steps: Start, CleanUp, and End.

See *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide* for details on how to create workflows.

- 2** For the CleanUp step, set the following:
  - a** Set Business Service to CSM Log Service.
  - b** Set Method to CleanUp.

- c** There is no input argument or output argument for this method.

### **To delete entries in the CSM log**

This is also called the RemoveOldEntry () function.

- 1** Create a workflow with three steps: Start, RemoveOldEntry, and End.

See *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide* for details on how to create workflows.

- 2** For the RemoveOldEntry step, set the following:

- a** Set Business Service to CSM Log Service.

- b** Set Method to RemoveOldEntry.

- 3** Create one input argument and set Input Argument = TransactionId.

- 4** Find the value of this input argument in the CSM Log View.

This workflow deletes records in the CSM Log table that have a transaction ID smaller than the input argument.

### **To run a workflow from the command line**

- 1** From a DOS (or shell) prompt, change the current directory to:

```
<Siebel Installation directory>\siebsrvr\bin
```

- 2** Enter:

```
srvrmgr /g <gateway> /e <enterprise> /s <siebsrvr> /u <username>  
/p <password>
```

- 3** To run wfprocmgr, enter:

```
start task comp wfprocmgr with ProcessName="<Workflow Name>"
```

Administrators determine how frequently to repair orphaned child records and delete CSM log entries. Typically, the frequency should be determined by how often Merging is used to clean up duplicate entries.

This appendix includes three sections.

- The first section, “[Routing Definition Differences in Docking Objects](#)” on [page 261](#), includes a table that provides an overview of the differences between the docking objects in Siebel 7.5 and Siebel 7.0.4.
- The second section, “[Visibility Level Changes for Docking Objects](#)” on [page 268](#), includes four tables to identify the docking objects that changed visibility levels to help optimize mobile database size. For example, some docking objects changed visibility from Enterprise to Regional.
- The third section, “[New Regional Docking Objects](#)” on [page 272](#), includes one table to identify the new regional docking objects that further optimize mobile database size.

## Routing Definition Differences in Docking Objects

[Table 31](#) compares the routing definition differences between Siebel 7.0.4 and Siebel 7.5 docking objects, and lists new ones for Siebel 7.5. The table provides a comparison of pairs of docking objects between the two versions, or identifies new docking objects for Siebel 7.5. To read [Table 31](#) use the following:

- If the Version field of a row reads 7.0.4, compare it with the 7.5 row immediately below it.

## Docking Object Changes

### *Routing Definition Differences in Docking Objects*

- If the Version field of a row reads 7.5 and the Version field of the row immediately above it also reads 7.5, a docking object is new in Siebel 7.5.

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level	Primary Table	DO Active?
7.5	AppLicense	Private	S_APP_LICENSE	Y
7.0.4	AssignGroup	Enterprise	S_ASGN_GRP	Y
7.5	AssignGroup	Limited	S_ASGN_GRP	Y
7.5	AssignRuleGroup	Limited	S_ASGN_RULE_GRP	Y
7.0.4	BusComp Audit	Enterprise	S_AUDIT_BUSCOMP	Y
7.5	BusComp Audit	Limited	S_AUDIT_BUSCOMP	Y
7.5	CFGCache	Private	S_CFG_CACHEREQ	Y
7.5	CFGConstrain	Enterprise	S_CFG_CNSTR_TBL	Y
7.5	CFGRuleNode	Private	S_CFG_RULENODE	Y
7.0.4	CFGUIGrp	Enterprise	S_CFG_UIGROUP	Y
7.5	CFGUIGrp	Limited	S_CFG_UIGROUP	Y
7.0.4	CHAMP	Enterprise	S_CHMPINTV	Y
7.5	CHAMP	Limited	S_CHMPINTV	Y
7.0.4	CTI Cfg	Enterprise	S_CTI_CFG	Y
7.5	CTI Cfg	Limited	S_CTI_CFG	Y
7.5	CalendarResource	Enterprise	S_CAL_RSRC	Y
7.0.4	Call Script Page	Enterprise	S_CS_PAGE	Y
7.5	Call Script Page	Limited	S_CS_PAGE	Y
7.0.4	Call Script Path	Enterprise	S_CS_PATH	Y
7.5	Call Script Path	Limited	S_CS_PATH	Y
7.0.4	Call Script Question	Enterprise	S_CS_QUEST	Y
7.5	Call Script Question	Limited	S_CS_QUEST	Y

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

<b>Version</b>	<b>Docking Object</b>	<b>Visibility Level</b>	<b>Primary Table</b>	<b>DO Active?</b>
7.0.4	Call Script Style	Enterprise	S_CS_STYLE	Y
7.5	Call Script Style	Limited	S_CS_STYLE	Y
7.0.4	Catalog	Enterprise	S_CTLG	Y
7.5	Catalog	Limited	S_CTLG	Y
7.0.4	Catalog Category	Enterprise	S_CTLG_CAT	Y
7.5	Catalog Category	Limited	S_CTLG_CAT	Y
7.0.4	CommTemplate	Enterprise	S_COMM_TMPL	Y
7.5	CommTemplate	Private	S_COMM_TMPL	Y
7.5	CompPlan Budget	Private	S_CP_BDGT	Y
7.5	CompPlan Guideline	Private	S_CP_GDLN_SET	Y
7.5	CompPlan Job	Private	S_JOB	Y
7.5	CompPlan Job Family	Private	S_JOB_FAMILY	Y
7.5	CompPlan Plan	Private	S_CP_PLAN	Y
7.5	CompPlan Region	Private	S_CP_REGN	Y
7.5	CompPlan Salary Grade	Private	S_SALARY_GRADE	Y
7.5	CompPlan Salary Plan	Private	S_SALARY_PLAN	Y
7.5	CompensationCap	Enterprise	S_IC_CAP	Y
7.5	CompensationCapTxn	Private	S_IC_CAP_RUNTXN	Y
7.5	CompensationDrawTxn	Private	S_IC_DRAW_RNTXN	Y
7.5	CompensationPayTxn	Private	S_IC_PAY_RUNTXN	Y
7.5	CompensationPaymentRelease	Limited	S_IC_PAY_RLSE	Y
7.5	CompensationPlanCap	Limited	S_IC_PLAN_CAP	Y
7.5	CompensationSkew	Enterprise	S_IC_SKEW	Y
7.5	Competency	Private	S_CMPTNCY	Y

## Docking Object Changes

Routing Definition Differences in Docking Objects

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level	Primary Table	DO Active?
7.5	Content Set	Limited	S_CB_CNTNT_SET	Y
7.5	Content Type	Limited	S_CB_CNTNT_TYPE	Y
7.5	Curriculum Course Person	Private	S_CURR_CRSE_PER	Y
7.5	Curriculum Step Person	Private	S_CURR_STEP_PER	Y
7.0.4	DD Attribute Family	Limited	S_DD_ATTRFAM	Y
7.5	DD Attribute Family	Private	S_DD_ATTRFAM	Y
7.0.4	DD Data Object	Limited	S_DD_DATA_OBJ	Y
7.5	DD Data Object	Private	S_DD_DATA_OBJ	Y
7.0.4	DD DbConnector	Limited	S_DD_DB_CNCTR	Y
7.5	DD DbConnector	Private	S_DD_DB_CNCTR	Y
7.0.4	DD Dimension	Limited	S_DD_DIM	Y
7.5	DD Dimension	Private	S_DD_DIM	Y
7.0.4	DD Extract	Limited	S_DD_EXTRACT	Y
7.5	DD Extract	Private	S_DD_EXTRACT	Y
7.5	Deal	Limited	S_DEAL	Y
7.5	DecisionBroker	Enterprise	S_BRKR_DECISION	Y
7.0.4	DockRoute	Enterprise	S_DOCK_ROUTE	Y
7.5	DockRoute	Limited	S_DOCK_ROUTE	Y
7.5	DockSession	Private	S_DOCK_SESSION	Y
7.0.4	Docking Object	Enterprise	S_DOCK_OBJECT	Y
7.5	Docking Object	Limited	S_DOCK_OBJECT	Y
7.5	Dynamic Hierarchy	Private	S_DYN_HRCHY	Y
7.0.4	EAILookupMap	Enterprise	S_EAI_LOOKUPMAP	Y
7.5	EAILookupMap	Limited	S_EAI_LOOKUPMAP	Y

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

<b>Version</b>	<b>Docking Object</b>	<b>Visibility Level</b>	<b>Primary Table</b>	<b>DO Active?</b>
7.5	ETL Country Region	Private	S_ETL_CTRYREGN	Y
7.5	ETL Curr Run	Private	S_ETL_CURR_RUN	Y
7.5	ETL Day	Private	S_ETL_DAY	Y
7.5	ETL Industry	Private	S_ETL_INDUS_VER	Y
7.5	ETL String	Private	S_ETL_STRINGS	Y
7.5	ETL Time Day	Private	S_ETL_TIME_DAY	Y
7.5	ETL VI Image	Private	S_ETL_VI_IMAGE	Y
7.5	ETL VR Image	Private	S_ETL_VR_IMAGE	Y
7.5	EmployeeAward	Private	S_PER_AWARD	Y
7.5	EmployeeCompetency	Private	S_EMP_CMPTNCY	Y
7.5	EmployeeEduQualification	Private	S_PER_EDU_QUAL	Y
7.0.4	EmployeePerformanceRating	Enterprise	S_PERF_RATING	Y
7.5	EmployeePerformanceRating	Enterprise	S_PERF_RTNG_SCL	Y
7.0.4	EmployeePerformanceReview	Enterprise	S_PERF_RVW	Y
7.5	EmployeePerformanceReview	Enterprise	S_PERF_RVW_TMPL	Y
7.5	EmployeeProfCertification	Private	S_PER_PROF_CERT	Y
7.5	EmployeeProfMembership	Private	S_PER_PROF_MBR	Y
7.5	EmployeeReviewComponent	Private	S_RVW_COMP	Y
7.5	EmployeeWorkExperience	Private	S_PER_WRK_EXP	Y
7.5	Event Location	Limited	S_EVTLOC	Y
7.5	GroupNews	Limited	S_CONTENT_PATH	Y
7.0.4	IntegrationObjectMap	Enterprise	S_INT_OBJMAP	Y
7.5	IntegrationObjectMap	Limited	S_INT_OBJMAP	Y
7.0.4	InternalOrg	Enterprise	S_ORG_INT	N

## Docking Object Changes

*Routing Definition Differences in Docking Objects*

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level	Primary Table	DO Active?
7.5	Job Profile	Private	S_JOB_PROFILE	Y
7.5	LicenseUsage	Private	S_LICENSE_USAGE	Y
7.0.4	ListofValue	Enterprise	S_LST_OF_VAL	Y
7.5	ListofValue	Limited	S_LST_OF_VAL	Y
7.5	Localization	Limited	S_LOCALE	Y
7.0.4	MasterForecast	Enterprise	S_MSTR_FCST	Y
7.5	MasterForecast	Private	S_MSTR_FCST	Y
7.5	NamedUser	Private	S_NAMED_USER	Y
7.5	News Package	Enterprise	S_NEWS_PKG	Y
7.5	Nquire Account	Private	S_NQ_ACCT	Y
7.5	Nquire Job	Private	S_NQ_JOB	Y
7.5	OnLink Category	Private	S_ONL_CATEGORY	Y
7.0.4	OpptyForecast	Limited	S_OPTY_FCST	Y
7.5	OpptyForecast	Private	S_OPTY_FCST	Y
7.0.4	OpptyProdForecast	Limited	S_OPTYPRD_FCST	Y
7.5	OpptyProdForecast	Private	S_OPTYPRD_FCST	Y
7.0.4	OrgForecast	Limited	S_ORG_FCST	Y
7.5	OrgForecast	Private	S_ORG_FCST	Y
7.5	Partner Web Service Port	Private	S_PRTNR_WS_PORT	Y
7.0.4	PersonForecast	Limited	S_PER_FCST	Y
7.5	PersonForecast	Private	S_PER_FCST	Y
7.0.4	Position	Enterprise	S_POSTN	N
7.0.4	Product Business Unit	Limited	S_PROD_INT_BU	Y
7.5	ProductBusinessUnit	Limited	S_PROD_INT_BU	Y

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

<b>Version</b>	<b>Docking Object</b>	<b>Visibility Level</b>	<b>Primary Table</b>	<b>DO Active?</b>
7.5	ProductDefectProductLine	Limited	S_PRDFCT_PRODLN	Y
7.0.4	ProductForecast	Limited	S_PROD_FCST	Y
7.5	ProductForecast	Private	S_PROD_FCST	Y
7.5	Project Attachment Log	Private	S_PROJ_ATT_LOG	Y
7.5	ProxyAccessUser	Private	S_USER_PROXY	Y
7.0.4	Responsibility	Enterprise	S_RESP	Y
7.5	Responsibility	Limited	S_RESP	Y
7.5	Revenue Template	Enterprise	S_REVN_TMPL	Y
7.5	SA Application	Limited	S_SA_APPL	Y
7.5	SA ContentType	Limited	S_SA_CNTNT_TYPE	Y
7.5	SA NameValueDef	Limited	S_SA_NMVAL_DEF	Y
7.5	SalesHierarchy	Limited	S_SLS_HIER	Y
7.5	SalesHierarchyVersionRule	Private	S_SLSHR_VER_RL	Y
7.5	SalesTerritory	Limited	S_SLS_TERR	Y
7.5	SalesWarehouseHierarchy	Private	S_SLS_TERR_WHIR	Y
7.5	SystemKeyMapping	Private	S_SYS_KEYMAP	Y
7.5	Task Based Process	Limited	S_TASK_PROCESS	Y
7.5	TeamCompetency	Private	S_TEAM_CMPTNCY	Y
7.5	Test Run Question Category	Private	S_TSTRUN_CATSTS	Y
7.5	TestCore1	Private	T_MASTER	Y
7.5	TestCore2	Private	T_DETAIL	Y
7.0.4	Time Zone	Enterprise	S_TIMEZONE	Y
7.5	Time Zone	Limited	S_TIMEZONE	Y
7.5	Training Course	Private	S_PROD_INT	N

## Docking Object Changes

### Visibility Level Changes for Docking Objects

**Table 31. Docking Comparison - Docking Object Differences**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level	Primary Table	DO Active?
7.5	UniversalInboxItem	Limited	S_UNVBX_ITEM	Y
7.5	UniversalInboxItmTyp	Limited	S_UNVBX_ITMTYPE	Y
7.5	UsageSummary	Private	S_USAGE_SUMMARY	Y
7.5	User Role Task	Limited	S_USER_TASK	Y
7.5	Web Application	Private	S_WEB_APPL	Y
7.5	Web Service	Enterprise	S_WS_WEBSERVICE	Y
7.5	Web Service Port Type	Enterprise	S_WS_PORT_TYPE	Y
7.0.4	Workflow	Enterprise	S_WF_STEP	Y
7.5	Workflow	Limited	S_WF_STEP	Y
7.0.4	XAClass	Enterprise	S_XA_CLASS	Y
7.5	XAClass	Limited	S_XA_CLASS	Y
7.5	ePortalItem	Private	S_PRTL_ITEM	Y
7.5	ePortalPage	Private	S_PRTL_PAGE	Y

## Visibility Level Changes for Docking Objects

The tables in this section identify the docking objects that changed visibility levels from Siebel 7.0.4 to Siebel 7.5, such as Enterprise to Regional. These changes help optimize mobile database size.

To read [Table 32](#) through [Table 36](#), compare a pair of rows—the 7.0.4 Version with the 7.5 Version immediately below it. The docking objects listed in [Table 32](#) through [Table 36 on page 271](#) are double entries in the Dock Object field, which allows comparison between the two versions.

**Table 32. Docking Objects Changed from Enterprise to Regional**

<b>Version</b>	<b>Docking Object</b>	<b>Visibility Level</b>
7.0.4	AssignGroup	Enterprise
7.5	AssignGroup	Regional
7.0.4	BusComp Audit	Enterprise
7.5	BusComp Audit	Regional
7.0.4	CHAMP	Enterprise
7.5	CHAMP	Regional
7.0.4	CTI Cfg	Enterprise
7.5	CTI Cfg	Regional
7.0.4	DockRoute	Enterprise
7.5	DockRoute	Regional
7.0.4	Docking Object	Enterprise
7.5	Docking Object	Regional
7.0.4	EAILookupMap	Enterprise
7.5	EAILookupMap	Regional
7.0.4	IntegrationObjectMap	Enterprise
7.5	IntegrationObjectMap	Regional

## Docking Object Changes

### Visibility Level Changes for Docking Objects

These docking objects pick up a routing value from the user interface. Their visibility levels can be set to enterprise, regional, or private depending upon the value entered through the UI.

**Table 33. Docking Objects Changed from Enterprise to UI Based**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level
7.0.4	Call Script Question	Enterprise
7.5	Call Script Question	User-Interface Based
7.0.4	ListofValue	Enterprise
7.5	ListofValue	User-Interface Based
7.0.4	Workflow	Enterprise
7.5	Workflow	User-Interface Based

**Table 34. Docking Objects Changed from Enterprise to Private**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level
7.0.4	CommTemplate	Enterprise
7.5	CommTemplate	Private

**Table 35. Docking Objects Changed from Enterprise to Limited**

Version	Docking Object	Visibility Level
7.0.4	Responsibility	Enterprise
7.5	Responsibility	Limited

**Table 36. Docking Objects Changed from Limited to Regional**

<b>Version</b>	<b>Docking Object</b>	<b>Visibility Level</b>
7.0.4	Comm	Limited
7.5	Comm	Regional
7.0.4	DD Filter	Limited
7.5	DD Filter	Regional
7.0.4	DD Hierarchical Attribute	Limited
7.5	DD Hierarchical Attribute	Regional
7.0.4	DD List Format	Limited
7.5	DD List Format	Regional
7.0.4	DD Measure	Limited
7.5	DD Measure	Regional
7.0.4	DD Measure-based Attribute	Limited
7.5	DD Measure-based Attribute	Regional
7.0.4	DD Sort Family	Limited
7.5	DD Sort Family	Regional
7.0.4	DD Source Code Format	Limited
7.5	DD Source Code Format	Regional
7.0.4	Note	Limited
7.5	Note	Regional
7.0.4	OrgSource	Limited
7.5	OrgSource	Regional
7.0.4	ProductDefect	Limited
7.5	ProductDefect	Regional
7.0.4	PrspCon	Limited
7.5	PrspCon	Regional

## New Regional Docking Objects

New Regional docking objects listed below help prevent routing of regional data to Mobile Web Clients. This also helps to optimize the mobile database size.

**Table 37. New Regional Docking Objects**

<b>Version</b>	<b>Docking Object</b>	<b>Visibility Level</b>
7.5	AssignRuleGroup	Regional
7.5	Content Set	Regional
7.5	Content Type	Regional
7.5	GroupNews	Regional
7.5	ProductDefectProductLine	Regional
7.5	SA Application	Regional
7.5	SA ContentType	Regional
7.5	SA NameValueDef	Regional
7.5	Task Based Process	Regional
7.5	UniversalInboxItem	Regional
7.5	UniversalInboxItmTyp	Regional

This appendix describes the routing models in Siebel Financial Services that are different from the routing models in Siebel Remote and Replication Manager.

## Using Routing Models in Siebel Financial Services

This section describes the routing models available out-of-the box in Siebel Financial Services. Each model determines what data will be extracted to, and what follow-on transactions will be routed to, Mobile Web Clients belonging to that model.

Each mobile user is associated with one routing model. A Routing Model includes a set of routing rules. The union of the routing rules determines whether a record will be routed to a Mobile Web Client. By careful application of specific routing models, local database sizes can be reduced, and, as a result, so are synchronization times and transaction application times.

---

**CAUTION:** Make sure Routing Models are consistent with the responsibilities and positions of the mobile users. The responsibilities and position of an employee determine the access that person has to the Server database. Balancing the data routing model with a user's access helps to optimize the size of that user's local database.

---

Siebel Financial Services includes the following, pre-defined, financial-services-specific routing models as indicated [Table 38 on page 274](#).

**Table 38. Pre-defined Siebel Financial Services Routing Models**

Routing Model	Siebel Responsibility	Type
Institutional Finance Sales Manager	Institutional Finance Sales Manager	Specialized
Institutional Finance Analyst	Institutional Finance Analyst	Specialized
Credit Originator	Credit Originator	Specialized
Insurance Sales Agent	Insurance Sales Agent	Specialized
Insurance Sales Manager	Insurance Sales Manager	Specialized
Claims Adjuster	Claims Adjuster	Specialized
Claims Manager	Claims Manager	Specialized

Each of these models should be used with a specific Siebel Responsibility as shown above. For customers that have a business requirement to reduce the amount of data replicated to mobile users, use one of the specialized routing models may be appropriate. Before deploying Siebel Remote with any of these specialized routing models, it is strongly recommended that you discuss this with Siebel Technical Support.

## Analyzing the Use of Routing Models

Before using the specialized Siebel Routing Models, assess and consider the impact of the following:

- Analyze the mobile users' usage patterns. Determine what data the users need and what they do not need when using Siebel Financial Services in the local mode.
- Compare the usage pattern with the definition of each routing model. Each model was designed for a specific class of mobile users.
- Perform a review of your Siebel installation and consider the following:
  - Did you modify any of the views assigned to the Siebel Responsibilities?

If an MVG field were added to an existing view, a mobile user could set the value of the MVG field to a “No Match” row-id by modifying any fields in the row or selecting the MVG field. The reason is that no data for the MVG was downloaded to Mobile Web Client. This action implicitly creates an update transaction to be replicated to the server during the next synchronization session. Database integrity is compromised when the transaction is applied on the server.

- Did you modify any of the Siebel Responsibilities by adding new views that are accessible in local mode?

Generally, views that contain data from limited visibility objects should have routing rules to support them. If a view is added that does not have corresponding routing rules, then no data will be replicated for that specific view. If such a view was added to a Siebel Responsibility and the implementation uses Client Wins for update conflict resolution, the following undesirable situation could occur—this should be avoided.

- A mobile user creates a new record using the newly added view on the Mobile Web Client.
- The mobile user synchronizes with the server.
- A Web client user makes changes to the same record on the server.
- The mobile user synchronizes and does not see the updates by the Web client to the same record.

- The mobile user makes changes to the record in the Mobile Web Client.
- The mobile user synchronizes and overwrites the content of the record on the server.

In this manner, a mobile user could unintentionally overwrite updates made by another user to the same record.

- Exposing a custom foreign key in a Siebel view and business component.

A custom foreign key may not have any Siebel Remote routing support, because routing rules were either deactivated out-of-the-box or no rule was created. As a result, no data will be routed to support the foreign key. If any base record containing this foreign key is touched or updated by a mobile user in their local database, it may inadvertently reset the reference to null and in turn, replicate this change to the server.

- If the answer to any of the above questions was yes, do not use any of the specialized routing models in [Table 38 on page 274](#).
- If the answer to all the above questions was no, conduct a field test with a small group of representative mobile users. Use the appropriate routing models and assess the impact of the specialized routing models on the Transaction Router. During the test, observe the following:
  - Local database size and the amount of data being replicated—should be reduced.
  - Mobile users can still perform business tasks—no data is missing that prevent the users from completing a critical business process.
  - Synchronization times—should be shorter.
  - Every server transaction should be routed to the Mobile Web Client except for those explicitly excluded in the routing models—if not, the users responsibilities may not match the routing model.
  - Every view that has data on the server should show the same data on the mobile client—if not, there is a strong possibility the wrong views were included in the users' responsibilities.
- If you have acceptable results from the field test, you are ready to deploy the routing models to the appropriate mobile users.

## **Descriptions of Financial Services Routing Models**

The descriptions on the following pages include the routing models available out-of-the-box in Siebel Financial Services. For more information about other Siebel eBusiness Applications routing models and application of these, see [“Using Routing Models” on page 96](#).

### **Insurance Sales Agent**

The Insurance Sales Agent model should be used for insurance field sales agents in your organization. This routing model should also be used for other remote users such as health insurance sales agents and site-visit coordinators. Users assigned the Insurance Sales Agent routing model receive a database extract and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to their positions.

The business components associated with this model include the following:

- Activities
- Applications
- Calendar Access
- Companies
- Contacts
- Events
- Facilities
- Households
- Opportunities
- Policies
- Providers
- Claims
- Service Requests

### **Insurance Sales Manager**

This routing model should be used for insurance sales managers in your organization. Users assigned the Insurance Sales Manager routing model will receive database extracts and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a manager of insurance sales agents. All records routed to any of a manager's direct reports will also be routed to the manager.

The business components associated with this model include those listed above for the Insurance Sales Agent in addition to the manager's Team's data associated with those business components.

### **Claims Adjuster**

The Claims Adjuster model should be used for insurance field claims adjusters in your organization. The business components associated with this model include the following:

- Households
- Contacts
- Policies
- Service Providers
- Claims
- Claim Elements
- Service Requests
- Activities
- Calendar Access

### **Claims Manager**

This routing model should be used for insurance claims managers in your organization. Users assigned the Claims Manager routing model will receive database extracts and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a manager of claims adjusters. All records routed to any of a Claims Manager's direct reports will also be routed to the Claims Manager.

The business components associated with this model include those listed above for the Claims Adjuster in addition to the manager's Team's data associated with those business components.

### **Credit Originator**

This routing model should be used for individuals in your organization responsible for originating mortgages or other consumer loans and for managers of these individuals. Users assigned the Credit Originator routing model will receive database extracts and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to loan origination. Managers will see all records for themselves and for all of their direct reports. A manager who does not have any direct reports will not receive any team-based data.

The business components associated with this model include the following:

- Activities
- Applications
- Contacts
- Events
- Opportunities
- Products

### **Institutional Finance Sales Manager**

Users assigned the Institutional Finance Sales Manager routing model will receive database extracts and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a manager of institutional finance sales. Managers see all records for themselves and all of their direct reports. A manager who does not have any direct reports will not receive any team-based data. This routing structure allows this model to be used for managers and nonmanagers alike, making for a simpler setup and administration process.

The business components associated with this model include the following:

- Activities
- Applications

- Calendar Access
- Call Reports
- Companies
- Contacts
- Employees
- Events
- Expense Reports
- Financial Accounts
- Holdings and Interests
- Households
- Literature
- Opportunities
- Products
- Securities
- Service Requests

---

**NOTE:** Literature routing is handled somewhat differently. Links to the literature are synched to the client but the actual literature attachments are only synched upon request.

---

### **Institutional Finance Analyst**

Users assigned the Institutional Finance Analyst routing model receive database extracts and follow-on transactions dealing with information relevant to a institutional finance analyst. Managers see all records for themselves and for all of their direct reports. A manager who does not have any direct reports will not receive any team-based data. This routing structure allows this model to be used for managers and non-managers alike, making for a simpler setup and administration process.

The business components associated with this model include the following:

- Activities
- Calendar Access
- Call Reports
- Companies
- Contacts
- Employees
- Events
- Expense Reports
- Holdings and Interests
- Literature
- Products
- Securities
- Service Requests

## **Routing Models for Financial Services**

*Using Routing Models in Siebel Financial Services*

# Index

## A

- administrator password, changing 229
- All List view, restriction 66
- All Opportunity List view, restriction
  - on 67
- analyst routing model 111
- application servers, setting up, regional nodes 220
- attachment files, monitoring 146, 148
- authentication
  - mobile client passwords 117
  - Replication Manager 229
  - synchronization authentication, types of 26
- Authentication parameter 75
- autodial preferences 84
- AutoStopDB parameter 25

## C

- cache size parameters 76
- CDDir parameter 126
- CD-ROM, extracting to 125
- child records, repairing orphaned records 257
- CleanFilesIter parameter 70
- CleanTxnsIter parameter 70
- Client parameter 126, 209
- Client Status view 142, 146
- Client Wins rule 53
- ClientDbType parameter 82
- ClientRootDir parameter 85
- ClientVersion parameter 127, 210
- commit interval 64
- configuration file, setting preferences 85
- conflict detection 52

## conflict resolution

- about 24, 52
- deleting conflicts 55
- duplicate conflicts 54
- merging conflicts 55, 239, 240
- notification, system preference setting 64
- system preference settings 61
- system preferences 61
- updating conflicts 53

connected users

- adding 223
- downloading changes to local database, process 43
- regional node support 186
- regional node, requirement 204, 206

connection parameters, encryption 89

connection time evaluation 154

consultant routing model 110

CSM log

- activating 259
- deleting entries 260

CSM Logging 64

CSSISDockFgetACKMsg 245

## D

data

- conflicts between mobile users 52
- divergence 52
- recovery 230
- storage, about 27

data integrity, corruption of 66

data routing models

- about 97
- analyst 111

- consistency with positions and responsibilities 97
- consultant 110
- field engineer 106
- field technician 99
- minimal data 113
- mobile client extract only 114
- mobile client standard 113
- mobile partner user 113
- sales manager standard 98
- sales representative standard 97
- senior field technician 101
- database
  - See also* local database
  - components, start-up parameters 81
  - database commit, interval 64
  - foreign key relationships 66
  - initialization 33
  - objects populated with data 210
  - template generation at server setup 37
- database extract
  - about 34
  - about running for mobile client 119
  - client database initialization of 129
  - concurrency rules 51
  - conflict resolution rules 53
  - extract file location parameter 209
  - extract parameters 126, 128
  - extracting to a CD-ROM directory 125
  - InitMethod parameter 209
  - list of users, extracting 123
  - multiple extracts 120
  - parallel extract size
    - recommendation 210
  - parameters table 209
  - regional node, requirement 204, 206
  - reporting hierarchies, condition of 121
  - running 122
  - sample server directory tree 210
  - Target node error message 129
- database files. *See* database templates
- Database Init Method parameter 209
- database server
  - about 19
  - access, about 19
  - hardware failure 168
  - media failure 169
  - RDBMS failure 168
  - types of data stored 27
- database snapshot
  - Generate New Database component, running 80
- Database Template Utility 32, 78
- database templates
  - about 78
  - creating 79
  - distributing 82
  - regenerating, timing of 33
- database volatility 155
- DatFileSize parameter 127, 210
- DBA password, changing 78
- DbpPwd parameter 81
- DbfFile parameter 81
- DbTmplFile parameter 126
- DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement 1 65
- DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement N 65
- dbxtract task 207
- DCK-00123 error 243
- DCK-00164 error 243
- DCK-00213 error 244
- DCK-00214 error 244
- Default Processes parameter 218
- diccache.dat file 220
- dicdata.dat file 220
- dictionary files 220
- directories, application server 32
- disk space requirements 155
- distmpl, invoking 82
- dock objects
  - about 187
  - defined 35
- DockConnString machine 25
- DockConnString parameter 86
- docking
  - changing routing rules 35
  - database template, creating new 78

- directory, about creating 23
  - hardware architecture 18
- Docking: Get All PostnCon rows 63
- Docking: Transaction Logging 61
- DockRepositoryName parameter 87
- DockTxnsPerCommit parameter 87
- Download Statistics view 148
- duplicate conflicts 54
- DX files
  - editing restriction (caution) 249
  - size parameter 226
  - storage of 23
  - transaction exchange 30
- E**
- ErrorMode parameter 74
- ExtractRepos parameter 126
- ExtractSince parameter 126
- F**
- field engineer routing model 106
- field technician routing model 99
- file server, media failure 168
- File System Manager, duties of 201
- foreign key relationships, problems with 66
- G**
- Generate New Database
  - about 32
  - database template, creating 78
- Generate New Database component, running 80
- H**
- hardware configuration, docking 18
- headquarters node
  - about 186
  - administration tasks, listed 221
  - sample configuration diagram 185
  - territory structures, importance of stabilizing 202
  - using routing group - full copy as backup 186
- Headquarters Server, processes 190
- hierarchy of regional nodes. *See* regional nodes
- HQ Application Server Comm Param parameter 225
- HQ Application Server Name parameter 225
- I**
- IdDbRecreate parameter 73
- IFaceTbls parameter 81
- initialization
  - See also* regional database, initializing local database 33
  - problems, troubleshooting 245
  - troubleshooting problems 245
- InitMethod parameter 126
- ISpace parameter 81
- L**
- Language Code parameter 210
- Language parameter 127, 210
- Local Area Network (LAN)
  - connections 20
  - synchronization 18
- local database
  - about 29
  - creating, view 37
  - database schema template, about 32
  - failure, recovering from 171
  - initialization diagram 39
  - initializing 37, 39
  - mobile user change process 46
  - performance considerations 29
  - preventing loss of transactions 121
  - process flow, downloading changes 43
  - refreshing 156
  - sizing considerations 33
- Local Database Initialization program 33
- local file system, about 29

LOGMGR: Vis Rules Per Statement 65  
LogTxnChgOnly parameter 239, 240

**M**

MaxCtxCache parameter 75, 76  
Maximum number of operations written per file parameter 226  
Maximum Number of Transactions to Merge per Database Commit Cycle parameter 227  
MaxRead parameter 69, 72  
MaxTasks parameter 75  
MaxWrite parameter 72  
media failures  
    database server 169  
    file server 168  
    Siebel Database Server 169  
    Siebel File Server 168  
    Siebel Remote Server 167  
message-of-the-day 156  
MinCtxCache parameter 75, 76  
minimal data routing model 113  
mobile clients  
    *See also* mobile users  
    authentication 50  
    autodial preferences, setting 84  
    client status, about monitoring 142  
    configuring Regional Node, overview 218  
    configuring Siebel Regional Node for 218  
    database, initializing 130  
    deactivating 157, 158  
    deleting 159  
    initialization failure, recovery 171  
    network connectivity 84  
    NT user, creating 118  
    ODBC code page settings 84  
    password, creating 118  
    productivity evaluation 155  
    reactivating 158  
    registering 91, 93

reinitialization, synchronization requirement 211  
remote status, viewing 134  
repository upgrades, preparing for 235  
server directories, creating 32  
synchronization requests, handling 34  
synchronization start-up process 131, 133  
task overview 83, 119  
transaction log truncation, consequences of 28  
views, required 91  
mobile clients, database  
    adding to regional database 222  
    assignment to 205  
    authentication with database 50  
    initializing 129  
    local database, use of 29  
mobile clients, database extract  
    about running 119  
    client database initialization 129  
    extract parameters 126, 128  
    extracting to a CD-ROM directory 125  
    list of users, extracting 123  
    multiple extracts 120  
    reporting hierarchies, condition of 121  
    running 122  
mobile clients, routing models  
    about 97  
    analyst 111  
    consultant 110  
    field engineer 106  
    field technician 99  
    minimal data 113  
    mobile client extract only 114  
    mobile client standard 113  
    mobile partner user 113  
    sales manager standard 98  
    sales representative standard 97  
    senior field technician 101  
mobile clients, synchronization  
    procedure 49  
    process, overview 39, 42

- mobile partner user routing model 113
  - mobile users
    - See also* mobile clients
    - about 17
    - All List view, restriction 66
    - All Opportunity List view, restriction 67
    - change process 46
    - conflicting data resolution 52, 55
    - directories 32
    - local database, creating 37
    - message-of-the-day 156
    - registration prerequisite 37
    - routing model, changing 160
    - sending messages to 156
    - Siebel Remote and Siebel Replication Manager, comparison of 184
    - Siebel Remote client, starting 30
    - starting synchronization session 40, 42
    - synchronization frequency 154
    - unable to view records, troubleshooting 251
  - modem connections
    - about 20
    - servers 155
  - monitoring tasks 229
  - Move parameter 127
  - MRG: Docking Timestamp Source 61
  - MRG: System Conflict Resolution 61
  - MRG: Txns per Commit 64
  - MRG: User Friendly Notification 64, 134
- N**
- nodes
    - node hierarchy, about 202
    - parent node, defined 183
    - regional node, defined 183
  - NTDomain parameter 75
  - Number of iterations parameter 227
- O**
- ODBC
    - code page settings 84
    - drivers 199
  - Oracle database
    - enabling srvrinit utility 200
    - storage parameters for Regional Database 201
  - orphaned child records, about repairing 257
  - OutputDir parameter 209
- P**
- parent node
    - defined 183
  - password, changing administrator password 229
  - pdbextract task 209
- Q**
- quiet mode 25
- R**
- RDBMS
    - failure 168
    - requirements for regional nodes 200
  - ReadClientsIter parameter 73
  - Receive files from the HQ server parameter 226
  - Receive txns from the HQ server parameter 226
  - regional database
    - about data recovery 230
    - about synchronizing 223
    - about upgrading 233
    - accounts, about creating 217
    - adding mobile users 222
    - backing up data 230
    - connected users, adding 223
    - determining contents of 186
    - extraction, single thread 206
    - installation prerequisites 200
    - mobile databases, adding 205
    - parallel extraction 208
    - required accounts 200

- rollback segment size requirement 211
- Regional Database Server, about
  - installation 200, 201
- regional database, initializing
  - about initializing 211
  - about restarting initialization process 213
  - Initialization utility 211
  - post-initialization tasks 217
  - procedures 212, 213
  - restarting initialization 213
- regional database, routing group
  - about changing 227
  - role of 186
- Regional Node
  - overview of configuring for mobile clients 218
- regional nodes
  - about defining 201
  - about regional node hierarchy 184
  - about reinitializing 211
  - administration tasks, listed 221
  - application servers, setting up 220
  - connected users, adding 223
  - connected users, requirement 204, 206
  - data contents 186
  - deactivating 231
  - defined 183
  - implementation process overview 197, 198
  - installation prerequisites 197
  - mobile clients, adding 222
  - RDBMS requirement for 200
  - reactivating 232
  - registering 203, 204
  - required components 188, 190
  - sample configuration diagram 185
  - sample server directory tree 210
  - Siebel components, required 198
  - Siebel Database Server, about
    - installing 200
  - Siebel File System requirement 201
  - Siebel Gateway Server installation 199
  - Siebel Server, about installing 199
  - synchronization tip 202
  - territory structures, importance of stabilizing 202
  - types of users supported 186
  - upgrading the repository 233, 236
- Regional Server - Full Copy option. *See* routing group, full copy option
- Regional Server - Standard option. *See* routing groups, standard option
- remote implementation
  - changing routing rules 35
  - database template, creating 78
- remote server. *See* Siebel Remote Server
- remote status, viewing 134
- Replication Agent
  - about 223
  - parameter table 225, 227
  - starting 218, 224
- Replication Manager
  - architecture 184
  - authentication 229
- repository. *See* Siebel Repository
- responsibilities, routing model
  - consistency 97
- rollback segment, reducing size of 211
- routing group
  - about 227
  - changing 228
  - modification of 188
  - and Regional Nodes 186
- routing group, full copy option
  - about 186
  - compared to routing group - standard 187
- routing group, standard option
  - about 187
  - compared to routing group, full copy 187
  - guideline for using 187
- routing models
  - about 97
  - analyst 111

- changing for mobile user 160
- consistency with positions and responsibilities 97
- consultant 110
- field engineer 106
- field technician 99
- minimal data 113
- mobile client extract only 114
- mobile client standard 113
- mobile partner user 113
- sales manager standard 98
- sales representative standard 97
- senior field technician 101
- routing rules
  - about 35, 187
  - number checked, system preference setting 65
  - preconfigured routing rules 35
- S**
- S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG
  - flow diagram 22
  - troubleshooting 253
  - truncation, consequences of 28
- sales manager routing model 98
- sales representative routing model 97
- Selective retrieval 18
- Send txns to the HQ server parameter 226
- senior field technician routing model 101
- Server Manager, monitoring Siebel Remote server tasks 153
- server modem connections 155
- Server Wins rule 53
- Session Manager 39
- SetAppName parameter 72
- Siebel Administrator account 200
- Siebel Anywhere, repository upgrade 234
- Siebel Assignment Manager
  - role in merge conflicts 239, 240
  - role in regional node definition 202
- Siebel Client database
  - recovering from failure 171
  - refreshing 156
- Siebel Database Server
  - downloading changes to local database, process 43
  - headquarters node 186
  - media failure 169
  - mobile user change process 46
  - Regional Nodes, about installing for 200
- Siebel database, about 19
- Siebel File Server, troubleshooting media failure 168
- Siebel File System
  - about 19
  - contents of 28
  - File System Manager, role of 201
  - headquarters node 186
  - local file system, about 29
  - requirement for regional nodes 201
- Siebel Gateway Server, about installing 199
- Siebel Mobile Web Client. *See mobile clients entries* 20
- Siebel Remote
  - about 17
  - architecture diagram 19
  - compared to Siebel Replication Manager 184
  - conflicting data, resolution 52
  - data flow diagram 26, 27
  - hardware components 19, 20
  - process overview 21, 25
  - server tasks, monitoring 153
  - system preferences, setting 58
  - transmission failure 167
  - Windows NT user rights, enabling 77
- Siebel Remote client
  - about 20, 30
  - communication protocol 30
  - setup overview 237
  - standalone synchronization 30
- Siebel Remote Server
  - about 20
  - between synchronization sessions 43

- components, configuring for mobile clients 218
- components, starting/stopping 138
- contents of 23
- database template generation 37
- databases, distributing 82
- directories for mobile users 32
- media failure 167
- routing and merging diagram 40
- server failure 167
- setup overview 237
- start-up parameters 67
- Siebel Remote Synchronization Manager, security and authentication 50
- Siebel Replication Manager
  - administration tasks, listed 221
  - architecture 184, 186
  - benefits of 184
  - compared to Siebel Remote 184
  - overview 183
  - sample configuration diagram 185
- Siebel Repository
  - about upgrading 233
  - upgrading (without Siebel Anywhere) 235, 236
  - upgrading with Siebel Anywhere 234
- Siebel Server
  - about installing for regional nodes 199
  - authentication process 50
  - headquarters node 186
  - installing for Regional Node 199
- Siebel Tableowner account 200
- Siebel Tools 233
- Siebel Upgrade Wizard 212
- Siebel Web Server Extension (SWSE) 217
- SleepTime parameter
  - Replication Agent parameter 225
  - Transaction Merger startup parameter 74
  - Transaction Processor startup parameter 69
  - Transaction Router startup parameter 72
- SQL
  - number routing rules checked, system preference setting 65
  - routing rules system preference setting 65
  - SQL Anywhere, suppressing window at startup 25
- SRF file. *See* Siebel Repository
- svrinit utility
  - about implementing 200
  - enabling in Oracle 200
  - location 211
  - parameters and command-line flags 214
- Stand-Alone Synchronizer 131, 133
- storage parameters, Oracle requirements for Regional Database 201
- synchronization
  - See also* Synchronization Manager; Replication Agent
  - about repairing orphaned child records 257
  - about synchronizing regional database 223
  - after failure 230
  - authentication parameter 26
  - authentication process 50
  - background synchronization 30
  - between sessions 43
  - configuration parameters 85
  - connection parameter encryption 89
  - defined 17
  - diagnosing and restoring database synchronization 169, 170
  - frequency managing 154, 155
  - local transaction log, clearing 46
  - mobile clients, procedure 49
  - overview 39, 42
  - process overview 24
  - recommended frequency 26
  - Stand-alone 30
  - starting session, mobile user 40, 42
  - starting Siebel Remote client 30
  - transactions forwarding from Siebel Remote 29

- troubleshooting 245
  - Synchronization Manager
    - authentication and security 50
    - concurrency rules 51
    - database connections 76
    - start-up parameters 75, 76
    - tasks, starting 34
  - SyncSince parameter 127
  - system preferences
    - CSM Logging 64
    - DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement 1 65
    - DBX: Vis Rules Per Statement N 65
    - Docking: Get All PostnCon rows 63
    - Docking: Transaction Logging 61
    - LOGMGR: Vis Rules Per Statement 65
    - MRG: Docking Timestamp Source 61
    - MRG: System Conflict Resolution 61
    - MRG: Txns per Commit 64
    - MRG: User Friendly Notification 64, 134
    - setting 58
- T**
- TableOwner parameter 87
  - tablespaces, data and index 201
  - Target node error message 129
  - timestamp system preference settings 61
  - trace file 249
  - Transaction Log table, managing 231
  - transaction logs
    - log table, deleting entries 253, 255
    - modifying 46
    - monitoring 150
  - Transaction Merger
    - about 24, 36
    - concurrency rules 51
    - configuring 69
    - enabling logging, system preference 64
    - optimal number, determining 141
    - process diagram 40
    - starting 68
    - start-up parameters 74
    - troubleshooting 249
  - Transaction Processor
    - about 28, 34
    - concurrency rules 51
    - routing transactions 28
    - setup rules 139
    - starting 67
    - start-up parameters 69, 71
    - transaction log table, deleting entries
      - from 253, 255
  - Transaction Router
    - about 28, 35
    - concurrency rules 51
    - configuring 72
    - optimal number, determining 140
    - parallel processes, about running 140
    - performance of 36
    - preference setting for S\_POSTN\_CON
      - table 63
    - process diagram 40
    - setup rules 140
    - starting 68
    - start-up parameters 72
  - transactions
    - about processing 17
    - between synchronization sessions 43
    - log file (S\_DOCK\_TXN\_LOG) 22
    - processing, flow description 22
    - transaction log, truncation warning 28
    - transaction logging system preference
      - setting 61
    - viewing transaction information 146, 148
  - transmission failures 167
  - troubleshooting
    - client initialization failure, recovery 171
    - CSSISDockFgetACKMsg 245
    - DCK-00123 error 243
    - DCK-00164 error 243
    - DCK-00213 error 244
    - DCK-00214 error 244
    - DX file editing restriction 249
    - initialization problems 245
    - mobile users unable to see records 251
    - RDBMS failure 168

Siebel Database Server media failure 169  
Siebel File Server media failure 168  
Siebel Remote Server failure 167  
Siebel Remote Server media failure 167  
Siebel Remote transmission failure 167  
synchronization problems 245  
trace file 249  
transaction log table 253, 255  
transaction merger failure 249  
TruncateTSTable parameter 128  
TSBlockSize parameter 70, 128  
TSCacheSize parameter 71, 72, 128  
TSpace parameter 81  
TSTableNum parameter 128  
txnroute.exe file, startup parameters 72

**U**

update conflicts 53

Upload Statistics view 146  
UseDdlFile parameter 81  
UseTxnLog parameter 81

**V**

visibility  
dock object classification 35  
mobile client standard routing model 113  
mobile users, restriction 66  
troubleshooting problems with 251

**W**

WAN connections, about 20  
WarehouseTbls parameter 82  
Windows NT user rights, enabling 77  
WriteCompressed parameter 70, 72